



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

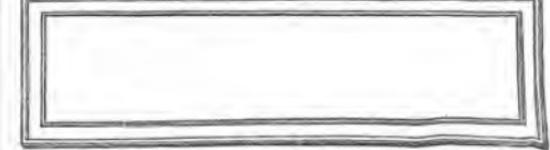
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

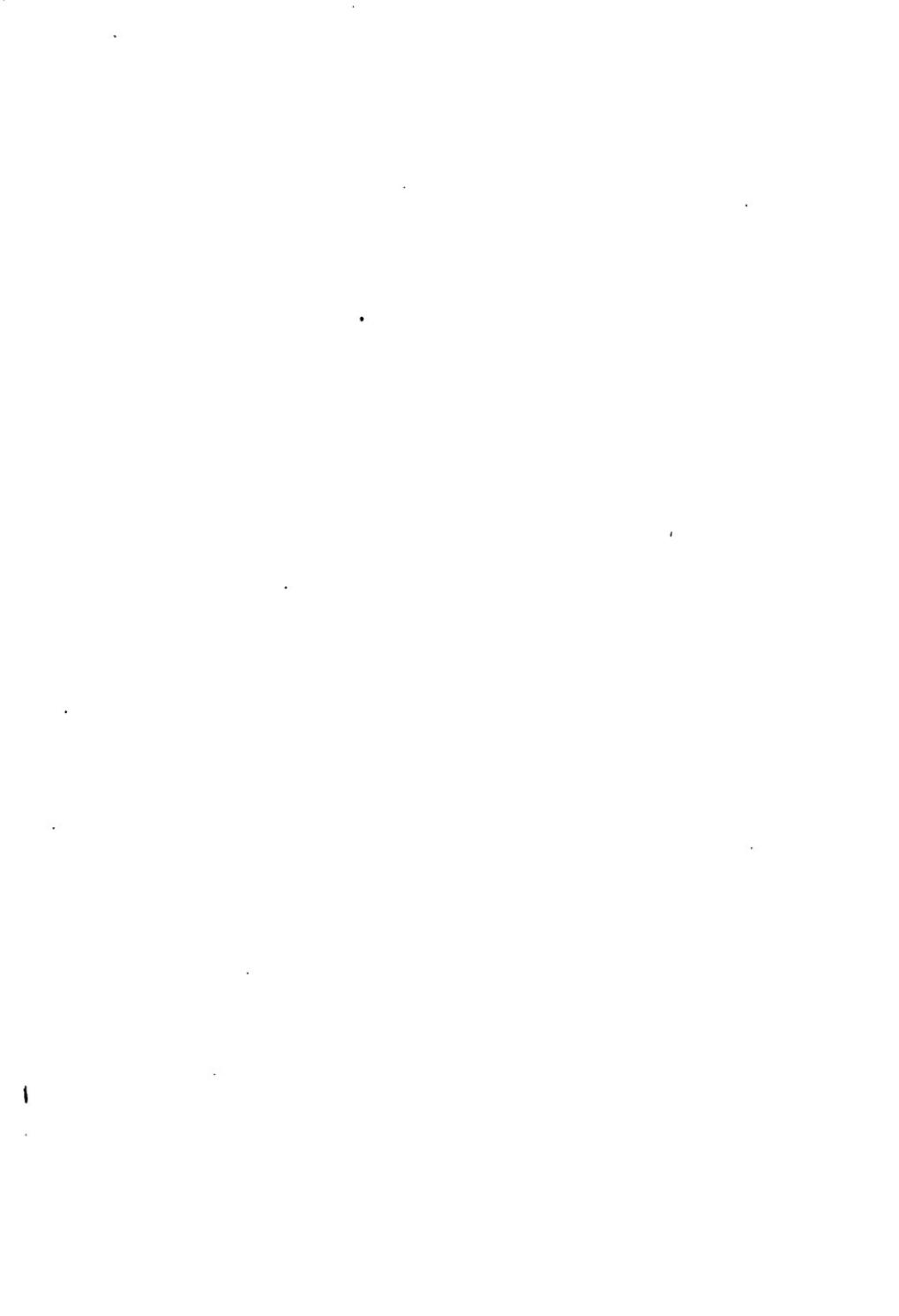
GIFT

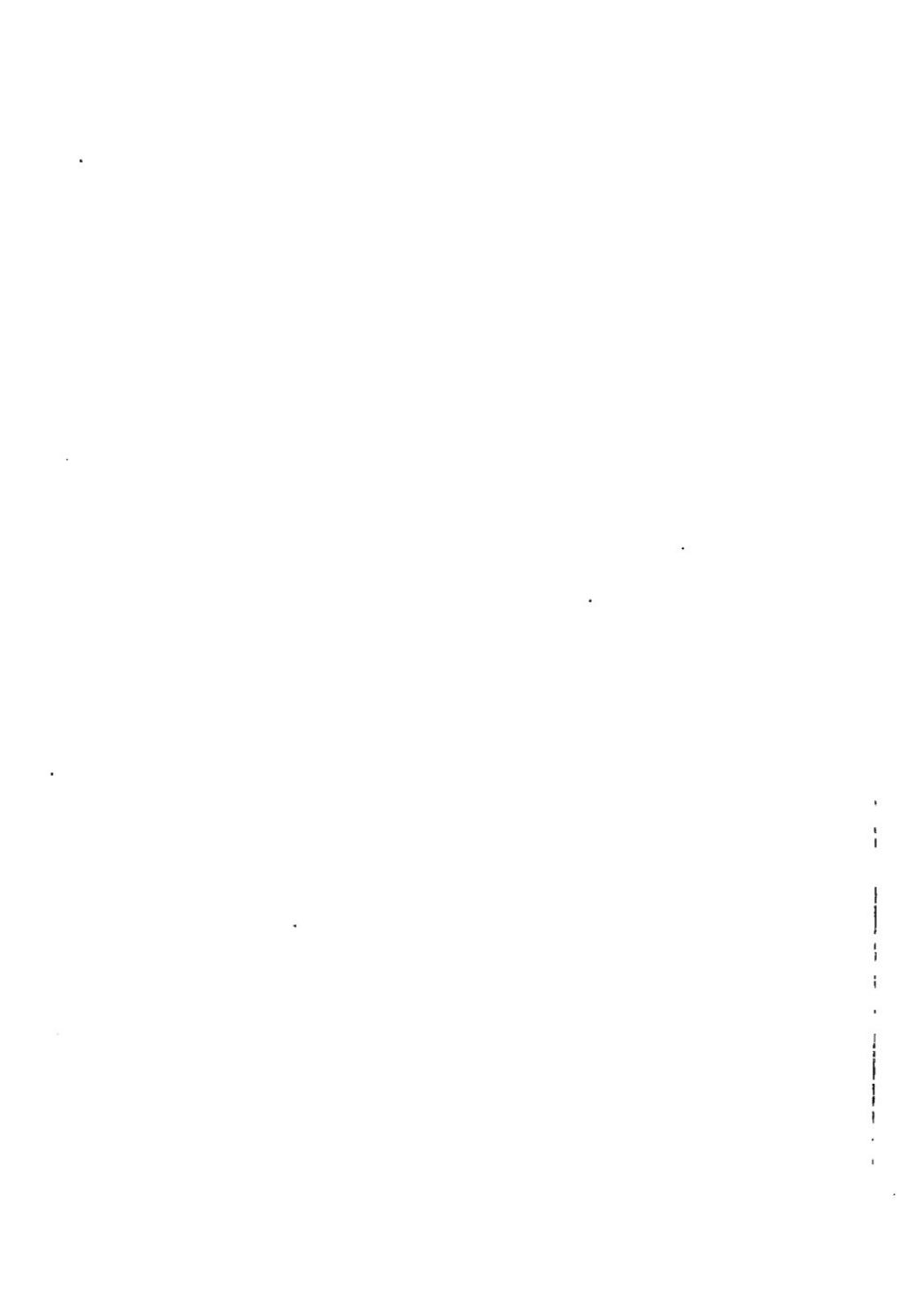
GIFT OF
Mrs. F. M. Foster



EX LIBRIS







Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

- Essentials of Latin for Beginners.** Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.
- A School Latin Grammar.** Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.
- A First Latin Writer.** M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.
- Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing.** Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.
- Caesar.** Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.25.
- Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters.** J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University. \$1.25.
- Six Orations.** \$1.00.
- Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading.** Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.
- Cicero. Cato Maior.** Frank G. Moore, Columbia University. 80 cents.
- Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia.** Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.
- Selections from Livy.** Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.
- Horace. Odes and Epodes.** Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.
- Horace. Satires.** Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.00.
- Horace. Satires and Epistles.** Edward P. Morris, Yale University. \$1.25.
- Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare,** Moore. Satires and Epistles, Morris. In one volume. \$2.00.
- Pliny's Letters.** Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.
- Tibullus.** Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.
- Lucretius.** William A. Merrill, University of California. \$2.25.
- Latin Literature of the Empire.** Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
- Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius \$1.80
- Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliiana to Claudianus \$1.80
- Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans.** James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. \$1.25.
- Others to be announced later.*

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD
HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK

REVISED

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Add to lib.

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. 20

Foster

PA2087
P43
1912

PREFACE

THIS book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallic War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.
2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.
3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.
4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.
5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are stories for rapid reading, based on the vocabulary and constructions already studied, and selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, in simplified form. This material should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms : Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City ; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City ; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City ; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified ; a different arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix ; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller ; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method or scope of the work.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

June, 1911.

H. C. P

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	11
1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns	16
2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	20
4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o-</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Masculine of Adjectives	25
6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. Indirect Object	28
7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> . Agreement	30
8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	33
9. Second Declension (continued). Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Adjectives in <i>-er</i> , <i>-(e)ra</i> , <i>-(e)rum</i>	36
10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review	40
11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i>	60
18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON	PAGE
21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Abla- tive of Specification	78
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>īō</i>	89
29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31. <i>Is</i> , <i>Idem</i>	95
32. The Relative Pronoun	98
33. <i>Hic</i> and <i>Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34. <i>Ipse</i> , <i>Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i>	107
36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37. Fourth Declension	111
38. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession	114
39. Irregular Verb <i>Eō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither	116
40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possūm</i>	131
46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

CONTENTS

9

LESSON		PAGE
53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII		154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings		155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements		157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Utor</i> , <i>Fruor</i> , etc.		161
57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . Dative with Intransitives		163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII		165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose		166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses		169
61. <i>Volō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> , <i>Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose		172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses		174
63. Substantive Clauses		178
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX		181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive		182
66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs		185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations		187
68. Gerund and Gerundive		190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms		193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X		194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time		196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time		198
73. Wishes		200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences		202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose		204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations		206
SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING		209
SELECTIONS FOR READING :		
Selections from Roman History		227
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1-20		236
APPENDIX. Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax		248
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY		289
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY		321
INDEX		337



(10)

ITALY AND GAUL

SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in *iünior*.
3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*. The other letters are consonants.
4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one sound. They are

ae oe au eu ui

PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows:

<i>ä</i> like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .	<i>i</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
<i>é</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> .	<i>ó</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i> .
<i>ú</i> like <i>oo</i> in <i>root</i> .	

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows:

<i>a</i> like the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahd</i> .	<i>i</i> like <i>i</i> in <i>pit</i> .
<i>e</i> like <i>e</i> in <i>step</i> .	<i>o</i> like <i>o</i> in <i>or</i> .
<i>u</i> like <i>u</i> in <i>pull</i> .	

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

- | | |
|---|--|
| c and g are always hard, as
in <i>come</i> and <i>go</i> . | s is a hissing sound, as in <i>sin</i> ;
never like z as in <i>ease</i> . |
| i consonant is like y in <i>yes</i> . | ch is like ch in <i>chorus</i> . |
| t is always hard, as in <i>tin</i> . | ph is like ph in <i>alphabet</i> . |
| v is like w in <i>wine</i> . | qu is almost like kw. |

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ae like ai in <i>aisle</i> . | au like ou in <i>house</i> . |
| oe like oi in <i>toil</i> . | eu (rare) like eh-oo. |
| ui is almost like we. | ei (rare) like ei in <i>eight</i> . . |

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

hī	iam	tot	mē	genus	-que	cui
ad	vīs	sīc	quia	coepit	vir	aeger
ita	quis	haec	causa	rēgnō	mēnsae	

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: *ae-dí-fi-cō*, *I build*.

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: *a-mí-cus*, *friend*, *di-xit*, *he said*.

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that l or r with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: *hós-pes*, *guest*, *díc-tus*, *said*, *sánctus*, *holy*, *cás-tra*, *camp*, *dē-móns-trō*, *I point out*, *cōgnós-cō*, *I recognize*, *pú-bli-cus*, *public*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: *ád-est* (*ad*, *near*; *est*, *he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-él-la**, *girl*.
15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (-) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**: **có-pí-a**, *abundance*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long: **có-gō** (**cōgō**), *I collect*.
3. Vowels are long before **nf**, **ns**, **nct**, **ncs**: **infrō**, *I bring in*; **insānus**, *mad*.
4. Diphthongs are long: **cáusa**, *cause*.

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature: **lē-gēs**, *laws*; **ae-dēs**, *temple*.

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x** or **z**, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short: **vocant**, *they call*; **dux**, *leader*.

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult: **témplum**, *temple*.

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: **amāre**, *to love*; **mittere**, *to send*.
4. Certain words like **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: **amátne**, *does he love?* **hóminésque**, *and the men.*

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

inīquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiae	filius	coepērunt	cuius
huic	īdem	filiusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings :

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative.* This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.¹
6. *Ablative.* This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. **Stem and Base.** — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that *o* of -*o*-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. **Conjugation.** — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

¹ Except in the singular of nouns in -*us* of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

GENDER

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *nauta, sailor; Tiberis, the Tiber; Caesar, Caesar; aquilō, north wind; Ianuārius, January.*
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: *filia, daughter; Italia, Italy; Athēnae, Athens; pirus, pear tree.*
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil, nothing.*

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -A-

FEMININE AND MASCULINE NOUNS

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem¹ *stellā*. Base¹ *stell-*.

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>stella, a star (as subject)</i> ²	-a
GEN.	<i>stellae, of a star, or star's</i>	-ae
DAT.	<i>stellae, to or for a star</i>	-ae
ACC.	<i>stellam, star, or a star (as object)</i>	-am
ABL.	<i>stellā, from, with, by a star</i>	-ā

¹ See 25. ² There is no article in Latin. Consequently *stella* may mean *star, the star, or a star.*

	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stellae, stars (as subject)	-ae
GEN.	stellarum, of stars, or stars'	-arum
DAT.	stellis, to or for stars	-is
ACC.	stellas, stars (as object)	-as
ABL.	stellis, from, with, by stars	-is

Note carefully

- That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
- That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
- That the -a of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like *stella*:

NOUNS

puella, ae, f., <i>girl</i> .	rosa, ae, f., <i>rose</i> .
rēgina, ae, f., <i>queen</i> .	via, ae, f., <i>road, way, street</i> .
stella, ae, f., <i>star</i> .	silva, ae, f., <i>forest</i> .
porta, ae, f., <i>gate</i> .	lūna, ae, f., <i>moon</i> .

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

- I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portīs. 3. Viā. 4. Rosīs.
5. Silvam. 6. Stellis. 7. Rēginae. 8. Viis. 9. Portae.
10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Rosa rēginae. 13. Viās silvārum.
- II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, pretty rose

Stem **rosā-** **pulchrā-**
Base **ros-** **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

- | | |
|------|---|
| NOM. | <i>rosa pulchra, a pretty rose</i> |
| GEN. | <i>rosae pulchrae, of a pretty rose</i> |
| DAT. | <i>rosae pulchrae, to or for a pretty rose</i> |
| ACC. | <i>rosam pulchram, a pretty rose</i> |
| ABL. | <i>rosā pulchrā, from, with, by a pretty rose</i> |

PLURAL

- | | |
|------|--|
| NOM. | <i>rosae pulchrae, pretty roses</i> |
| GEN. | <i>rosārum pulchrārum, of pretty roses</i> |
| DAT. | <i>rosis pulchris, to or for pretty roses</i> |
| ACC. | <i>rosās pulchrās, pretty roses</i> |
| ABL. | <i>rosis pulchris, from, with, by pretty roses</i> |

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together: *via lata, the wide road; puella parva, the little girl.*

33. Examine the following:

1. *Rosa pulchra est, the rose is pretty.*
2. *Rosae pulchrae sunt, the roses are pretty.*

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects **rosa** and **rosae** are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives **pulchra** and **pulchrae** agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*
2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case.*

35.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

- fābula, ae, f., story.**
sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
insula, ae, f., island.
terra, ae, f., land, country.

ADJECTIVES

- bona, good.**
lāta, broad, wide.
longa, long.
magna, large, great.
pulchra, beautiful, pretty.

VERBS

- est, (he, she, it) is, there is.**
sunt, (they) are, there are.

ADVERBS

- ubi, where, when.**
nōn, not.

CONJUNCTION

- et, and.**

36.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Fābulae longae sunt. 2. Terra est lāta et pulchra.
 3. Ubi est pulchra īnsula? 4. Lūna est pulchra. 5. Bonae sagittae sunt longae. 6. Nōn est pulchra. 7. Magnae sunt īnsulae. 8. Lātis terrīs. 9. Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae. 10. Via est lāta. 11. Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae?
 12. Sagittārum longārum.

- II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF sum

37. Examine the following:

1. Rosa puellae alba est, *the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
 2. Rosae puellārum albae sunt, *the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa**: not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE.—THE GENITIVE.—*The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB sum

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1ST PER. sum, I am	sumus, we are
2D PER. es, you are (thou art)	estis, you are
3D PER. est, (he, she, it) is, there is	sunt, they are, there are

¹ *It is, est.*

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, the woman is beautiful.

QUESTIONS

1. **Estne fēmina pulchra?** *is the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. **Nōnne fēmina pulchra est?** *is not the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. **Ubi est fēmina?** *where is the woman?*

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by **nōnne**.
3. That **-ne** is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (**qui, who**, **ubi, where**, **cūr, why**, etc.).

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., money.

vita, ae, f., life.

cōpia, ae, f., abundance (pl., *troops, forces*).

fēmina, ae, f., woman.

patria, ae, f., native land, country.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

filia,¹ ae, f., daughter.

ADJECTIVES

nova, new.

parva, small.

mea, my, mine.

tua, your, yours (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, always, ever.

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

¹ *Filia, daughter, and dea, goddess, have the ending -ābus, not -īs, in the dative and ablative plural: filiābus, deābus.*

42.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōnne sunt parvae filiae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vīta fēminaē. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiae rēginae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgina tuāe patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiae patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēgīnārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēgīnārum cōpiae? 14. Fēminaē Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

- II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

(READING SELECTION 441)

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT OBJECT

43. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹
1ST PER. <i>amō</i> , <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō (or -m), <i>I</i>
2D PER. <i>amās</i> , <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s, <i>you (or thou)</i>
3D PER. <i>amat</i> , <i>he loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t, <i>he, she, it</i>
PLURAL	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER. <i>amāmus</i> , <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
2D PER. <i>amātis</i> , <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
3D PER. <i>amant</i> , <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.

Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem **amā-**, the final vowel of which is lost before **-ō** in the first person singular, and is shortened before **-t**, **-nt**.
 2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.
- 44.** Like **amō**, conjugate the present indicative of
- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| pugnō , <i>I fight</i> | culpō , <i>I blame</i> |
| vocō , <i>I call</i> | laudō , <i>I praise</i> |

45. Carefully examine the following :

1. **Rēgina nautam laudat**, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. **Rēginae nautam laudant**, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. **Nautam laudant**, *they praise the sailor.*
4. **Nautam laudāmus**, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Agreement of Verb.** — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*
2. **Direct Object.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

<i>agricola, ae, m.,¹ farmer.</i>	<i>amō, I love, I like.</i>
<i>nauta, ae, m.,¹ sailor.</i>	<i>pugnō, I fight.</i>
<i>Italia, ae, f., Italy.</i>	<i>vocō, I call.</i>
<i>Rōma, ae, f., Rome.</i>	<i>culpō, I blame.</i>
<i>inopia, ae, f., lack, want.</i>	<i>laudō, I praise.</i>
<i>fida, faithful.</i>	<i>cūr, adv., why?</i>
<i>superba, proud, haughty.</i>	<i>in, prep. with abl., in, on.²</i>

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Graeciae īnsulae sunt parvae. 2. Pecūniā meā.
 3. Suntne cōpiae patriae tuae magnae? 4. Fēminaē filiae
 nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. Est cōpia pecūniae. 6. Pul-
 chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. Estne fābula nova?

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
 daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
 where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus. 2. Vocās; vo-
 cantne? vocātisne? 3. Cūr agricolās culpāmus? 4. In
 Italiā inopia est pecūniatē. 5. Laudantne nautās?
 6. Superbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. Rēginaē nautās
 nōn laudāmus. 8. Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae.
 9. Ubi sunt agricolārum filiae? 10. Cūr nautam cul-
 pat? 11. Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā.
 12. Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1.

² In is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. *Sunt in Eurōpā, they are in Europe.* *Pugnant in silvīs, they are fighting in the forest.*

2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹ are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor? 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. ***dominus*, m., master, lord**

Stem ***domino-***²

Base ***domin-***

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>dominus, master</i>	-us
GEN.	<i>domini, of the master</i>	-i
DAT.	<i>dominō, to or for the master</i>	-ō
ACC.	<i>dominum, master</i>	-um
VOC. ³	<i>domine, (O) master</i>	-e
ABL.	<i>dominō, from, with, by the master</i>	-ō
PLURAL		
NOM.	<i>domini, masters</i>	-i
GEN.	<i>dominōrum, of the masters</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	<i>dominīs, to or for the masters</i>	-is
ACC.	<i>dominōs, masters</i>	-ōs
VOC.	<i>domini, (O) masters</i>	-i
ABL.	<i>dominīs, from, with, by the masters</i>	-is

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in -us is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in -us.

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way.

² See 25.

³ See 24, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, good master

SINGULAR

NOM.	dominus bonus	<i>good master</i>
GEN.	domini boni	<i>of the good master</i>
DAT.	dominō bonō	<i>to or for the good master</i>
ACC.	dominum bonum	<i>good master</i>
VOC.	domine bone	<i>(O) good master</i>
ABL.	dominō bonō	<i>from, with, by the good master</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	domini boni	<i>good masters</i>
GEN.	dominōrum bonōrum	<i>of the good masters</i>
DAT.	dominis bonis	<i>to or for the good masters</i>
ACC.	dominōs bonōs	<i>good masters</i>
VOC.	domini boni	<i>(O) good masters</i>
ABL.	dominis bonis	<i>from, with, by the good masters</i>

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike? Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the -i of the genitive singular: genitive, **domini**, base **domin-**.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

amicus , i, m., <i>friend</i> .	bonus , <i>good</i> .
cibus , i, m., <i>food</i> .	malus , <i>bad, evil</i> .
dominus , i, m., <i>master, lord</i> .	parvus , <i>small</i> .
equus , i, m., <i>horse</i> .	superbus , <i>proud, haughty</i> .
hortus , i, m., <i>garden</i> .	fidus , <i>faithful</i> .
servus , i, m., <i>slave</i> .	dēlectō , <i>I delight, I please</i> .
sed , conj., <i>but</i> .	servō , <i>I keep, I preserve, I save</i> .
magnus , <i>great, large</i> .	

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
 3. Ubi nautae pugnant? 4. Nautae in viā pugnant.
 5. Filiam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper
 laudant.

- II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
 2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is
 the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Dominō; amīcōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; dominī
 superbi; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
 4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum
 laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae
 filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibum dominō servant.
 9. Culpāsne, amīce,¹ dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae
 parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr
 fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

- II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
 2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is
 in the garden. 4. He blames his² faithful horse. 5. The
 garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases
 the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

² Omit. The possessives in Latin are frequently omitted, when they are
 not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN **-um**.
APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. **dōnum**, *gift*

dōnum grātum, *acceptable gift*

Stem **dōno-**

Stem **dōno- grāto-**

Base **dōn-**

Base **dōn- grāt-**

SINGULAR

SINGULAR

NOM. **dōnum**, *gift*

NOM. **dōnum grātum**

GEN. **dōnl**, *of the gift*

GEN. **dōnl grātl**

DAT. **dōnō**, *to or for the gift*

DAT. **dōnō grātō**

ACC. **dōnum**, *gift* [gift]

ACC. **dōnum grātum**

ABL. **dōnō**, *from, with, by the*

ABL. **dōnō grātō**

PLURAL

PLURAL

NOM. **dōna**, *gifts*

NOM. **dōna grāta**

GEN. **dōnōrum**, *of the gifts*

GEN. **dōnōrum grātōrum**

DAT. **dōnis**, *to or for the gifts*

DAT. **dōnis grātis**

ACC. **dōna**, *gifts* [gifts]

ACC. **dōna grāta**

ABL. **dōnis**, *from, with, by the*

ABL. **dōnis grātis**

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. **Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat**, *Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. **Mārcō amicō cibum dō**, *I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, c, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*

2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum , i, n., <i>war</i> .	Mārcus , i, m., <i>Marcus</i> .
dōnum , i, n., <i>gift</i> .	incola , ae, m. and f., <i>inhabitant</i> .
oppidum , i, n., <i>town</i> .	
frūmentum , i, n., <i>grain</i> .	Rōmānus , i, m., <i>Roman</i> .
vinum , i, n., <i>wine</i> .	grātus , a, um, <i>acceptable, pleasing</i> (followed by dat.).
in , prep. with acc. ¹ <i>into, to, against; with abl., in, on, over.</i>	dō , <i>I give.</i>
	portō , <i>I carry.</i>

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Malum servum culpāmus.* 2. *Laudantne dominī superbi servōs fidōs?* 3. *Equī dominī sunt in magnō hortō.*

¹ See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with *in* when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). *Vinum in oppidum portat*, *he is carrying wine into the town*.

4. Ubi servi cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolae fidōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in dominī hortō. 7. Fēmina amīcī filiam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidīs; bella; vīnō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fidus. 3. Incolis vīnum damus. 4. Bellum Rōmānīs grātūm est. 5. Cibum in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārūm amīcūs, Rōmānūs est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentū portant. 8. Filiae rēgīnae in hortō sunt. 9. Vinum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōna incolis oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vīnum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum et vīnum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

(READING SELECTION 442)

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
VOC.	boni	bonae	bona
ABL.	bonis	bonis	bonis

Decline together **amicus fidus**, *faithful friend*; **puella parva**, *little girl*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. **Amicus est fidus**, *the friend is faithful*.
2. **Agricolae sunt validi**, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. **Puellae sunt parvae**, *the girls are small*.
4. **Nautas superbos non amamus**, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

- a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.
- b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus*, *the good sailor*; *pōculum magnum*, *the large cup*; *agricola validus*, *the strong farmer*.

65. RULE.—Agreement of Adjectives.—*Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

<i>malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked.</i>	<i>lātus, a, um, wide, broad.</i>
<i>magnus, a, um, great, large.</i>	<i>novus, a, um, new.</i>
<i>parvus, a, um, small.</i>	<i>fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.</i>
<i>meus, a, um, my, mine.</i>	<i>superbus, a, um, proud,</i> <i>tuus, a, um, your, yours.</i> <i>haughty.</i>
<i>grātus, a, um, acceptable,</i> <i>pleasing.</i>	<i>validus, a, um, strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>albus, a, um, white.</i>	<i>convocō, I call together, I summon.</i>
<i>cārus, a, um, dear.</i>	<i>hodiē, adv., to-day.</i>
<i>peritus, a, um, skillful.</i>	<i>nunc, adv., now.</i>
<i>longus, a, um, long.</i>	

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Filiae equīs cibum dant.* 2. *In opia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta.* 3. *Vocātisne incolās Galliae?* 4. *Ubi Rōmānī pugnant?* 5. *Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant.* 6. *Nauta Mārcō agricultorae bonum vīnum dat.*

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant.* 2. *Ubi est hodiē nauta peritus?* 3. *In oppidō nunc est nauta.* 4. *Dōna meīs amīcīs sunt semper grāta.* 5. *Equum*

agricolae validō fēminaē dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodīē perītōs agricolās nōn culpāmuſ. 10. Dōna rēgīnae in-colās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocās?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN
-er AND -ir

69.

Paradigms

*puer, boy**ager, field**vir, man*Stem **puero-**Stem **agro-**Stem **viro-**Base **puer-**Base **agr-**Base **vir-**

SINGULAR

Nom. **puer****ager****vir**Gen. **puerī****agrī****virī**Dat. **puerō****agrō****virō**Acc. **puerum****agrūm****virūm**Abl. **puerō****agrō****virō**

PLURAL

Nom. **puerī****agrī****virī**Gen. **puerōrum****agrōrum****virōrum**Dat. **pueris****agrīs****virīs**Acc. **puerōs****agrōs****virōs**Abl. **pueris****agrīs****virīs**

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no e before r.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in -er are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **liberi**, *children*.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber , libri , m., <i>book</i> .	Gallus , i , m., <i>a Gaul</i> .
liberi , liberōrum , m. (plur.), <i>children</i> .	vir , virī , m., <i>man</i> .
magister , magistri , m., <i>teacher</i> .	puer , puerī , m., <i>boy</i> .
ager , agri , m., <i>field</i> .	discipulus , i , m., <i>pupil</i> .
	multus , a , um , <i>much</i> ; plur., <i>many</i> .

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frumenti est in Galliā. 2. Incolis oppidi magni equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vīta Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram insulam frumentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many¹ sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

¹ *Many sturdy = many and sturdy*.

are summoning many troops into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Multī librī sunt in oppidō.* 2. *Virī puellās et puerōs laudant.* 3. *Cibum in oppidum portāmus.* 4. *Liber meō discipulō est grātus.* 5. *Rēgīna liberōs in oppidum convocat.* 6. *Discipuli magistri amicūm laudant.* 7. *Multi agricolae nunc in agrō sunt.* 8. *Filia mea liberōs magistrī laudat.* 9. *Incolārum agrī sunt lātī.* 10. *Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpat.* 11. *Ubi nunc sunt filiae meae librī?* 12. *Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.*



A Roman School

- II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, (**-e**)**ra**, (**-e**)**rum**

74.

filius, son		proelium, battle
Stem filio-		Stem proelio-
Base fili-		Base proeli-
	SINGULAR	
NOM. filius		proelium
GEN. fili (filii)		proeli (proelii)
DAT. filiō		proeliō
ACC. filiūm		proelium
VOC. fili		proelium
ABL. filiō		proeliō
	PLURAL	
NOM. filiī		proelia
GEN. filiōrum		proeliōrum
DAT. filiīs		proeliīs
ACC. filiōs		proelia
VOC. filiī		proelia
ABL. filiīs		proeliīs

- The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-i** (not **-ii**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōsiliūm**, *plan*; (gen.) **cōsiliī**.¹
- In proper names in **-ius** and **filius**, the vocative singular ends in **-i**: **fili**, (*O*) *son*; **Mercurius**, (voc.) **Mercúri**,¹ (*O*) *Mercury*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.
- Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

¹ In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75.

*liber, free*Stem **libero-**Base **liber-**

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. liber	libera	liberum
GEN. liber <i>ī</i>	liberae	liberi
DAT. liberō	liberae	liberō
	etc.	

*pulcher, beautiful*Stem **pulchro-**Base **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM. pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN. pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchri
DAT. pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
	etc.	

1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er**, **-era**, **-erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er**, **-ra**, **-rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberi, liberōrum, m. (plur.), children.

liber, libri, m., book.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Endings

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 27, 28)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

}

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in -er that have e before the r of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

<i>filius, filli, m., son.</i>	<i>proelium, proeli, n., battle.</i>
<i>nūntius, i, m., messenger.</i>	<i>miser, misera, miserum,</i>
<i>gladius, i, m., sword.</i>	<i>wretched, poor.</i>
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i>	<i>asper, aspera, asperum, rough,</i>
<i>beautiful, pretty.</i>	<i>fierce.</i>
<i>tener, tenera, tenerum, ten-</i>	<i>niger, nigra, nigrum, black.</i>
<i>der, delicate, dainty.</i>	<i>piger, pigra, pigrum, slow,</i>
<i>aedificium, i, n., building.</i>	<i>lazy.</i>

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. In agrō Mārcī amīci sunt multī equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistrī, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multī agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Italiae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiū liberōs in oppidum convocant?

- II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fili, libri sunt? 3. Nūntiorū sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna mei amīci filiī et filiābus grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpat?

*dabne
(abl)
plural*

10. Nūntī filiō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multī gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,¹ are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

(READING SELECTION 443)

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF sum. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of sum are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT	FUTURE
SINGULAR	
1. erām, I was	1. erō, I shall be
2. erās, you were	2. eris, you will be
3. erat, he was, there was	3. erit, he will be, there will be
PLURAL	
1. erāmus, we were	1. erimus, we shall be
2. erātis, you were	2. eritis, you will be
3. erant, they were, there were	3. erunt, they will be, there will be

I. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of sum?

82. Order of Words. — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

¹ Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.

The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. **Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal¹ order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show.

In the second sentence **fidōs** is more emphatic than in the first. In the third **agricolās fidōs** and **Caesar** are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., *vita, vital*; *nauta, nautical*. Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., *ager, field*; *agricola, farmer*. *Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.*

¹ The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	nūntius	pecūnia	amicus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rosa	inopia	stella	filia	
cibus	nauta	equus	filius	

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis.
 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Filiī agricultae
 erant parvī. 6. Filia nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā.
 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn
 erant pigrī. 9. Ubi gladiūs meī amīci erat? 10. In
 magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will
 be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were;
 he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was
 not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce
 inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON II

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the -re of the present infinitive active. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>a</i>
II.	<i>monēre, to advise</i>	<i>ē</i>
III.	<i>regere, to rule</i>	<i>e</i>
IV.	<i>audire, to hear</i>	<i>i</i>

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
<i>amō</i> <i>I love</i>	<i>amā|re</i> <i>to love</i>	<i>amāv|i</i> <i>I have loved</i>	<i>amāt|us</i> <i>loved</i>
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87.

Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. *amābam, I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. *amābās, you were loving, loved, did love*
3. *amābat, he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. *amābāmus, we were loving, loved, did love*
2. *amābātis, you were loving, loved, did love*
3. *amābant, they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>amābō, I shall love</i> | 1. <i>amābimus, we shall love</i> |
| 2. <i>amābis, you will love</i> | 2. <i>amābitis, you will love</i> |
| 3. <i>amābit, he will love</i> | 3. <i>amābunt, they will love</i> |

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem **amā-** imperf., **amā-bam**
amō pres. stem **amā-** fut., **amā-bō**

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, **parāre**, **parāvi**, **parātus**
laudō, *praise*, **laudāre**, **laudāvi**, **laudātus**
culpō, *blame*, **culpāre**, **culpāvi**, **culpātus**
convocō, *summon*, **convocāre**, **convocāvi**, **convocātus**

89.**VOCABULARY**

locus , i, m., plur., loci , m., <i>idōneus</i> , a, um, <i>fit, suitable.</i>	parō , <i>are, āvi, ātus, prepare.</i>
and loca , n., <i>place.</i>	
praemium , i, n., <i>reward.</i>	comparō , <i>are, āvi, ātus, pro-</i>
pilum , i, n., <i>javelin.</i>	<i>vide, get (bring) together.</i>
saxum , i, n., <i>rock.</i>	contrā , prep. with acc., <i>against.</i>
tēlum , i, n., <i>weapon.</i>	hasta, ae, f., spear.
castra, ðrum , n. (plur.), <i>camp.</i>	

90.**REVIEW EXERCISES**

- I. 1. Gallī filiābus agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cū fidum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocat. 5. Inopia cibī et vīni virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multi gladiī semper in oppidō sunt.

- II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castris idōneus? 9. Fili praemium erit pulchrum pilum. 10. Idōneās hastās viris dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pila sunt in castris. 12. Galli bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō*, *I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
----------	---

- | | |
|--|--------------|
| 1. <i>amāvī</i> , <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i> | <i>-i</i> |
| 2. <i>amāvistī</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i> | <i>-istī</i> |
| 3. <i>amāvit</i> , <i>he has loved, etc.</i> | <i>-it</i> |

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>amāvimus</i> , <i>we have loved, etc.</i> | <i>-imus</i> |
| 2. <i>amāvistis</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i> | <i>-istis</i> |
| 3. <i>amāvērunt</i> , or <i>amāvēre</i> , ¹ <i>they have loved, etc.</i> | <i>-ērunt</i> (-ēre ¹) |

¹ This form is rare. Always use the forms in -ērunt.

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on, repeated, or continued* in past time.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:
1. *Hastis et sagittis pugnabant, they fought with spears and arrows.*
 2. *Equis frumentum portabimus, we shall bring grain by means-of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives *hastis, sagittis, equis* express the *means or instrument*, the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE.—**Ablative of Means or Instrument.**—*The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

<i>lēgātus, i., m., ambassador,</i>	<i>dō, dare, dedi,¹ datus, give.</i>
<i>lieutenant.</i>	<i>oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, attack,</i>
<i>Graecus, i., m., a Greek.</i>	<i>besiege.</i>
<i>pauci, ae, a, few, a few.</i>	<i>arma, ūrum, n. (plur.), arms,</i>
<i>superō, āre, āvi, ātus, sur-</i>	<i>weapons.</i>
<i>pass, conquer, overcome.</i>	<i>hiberna, ūrum, n. (plur.), win-</i>
<i>armō, āre, āvi, ātus, arm,</i>	<i>ter quarters.</i>
<i>equip.</i>	<i>Helvētius, i., m., a Helvetian.</i>

¹ Note the irregular perfect.

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Dominus meus dōna filiābus dabit. 2. Nautae fidī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servī pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

- II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētiī oppidum saxis et armis oppugnābant. 4. Equis in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma viris dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmāni Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servi multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmāni Helvētiōrum oppida sagittis et pilis oppugnābant. 9. Incolās insulae tēlis armābimus. 10. In hibernis sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastis et sagittis superāvit. 12. Locus hibernī idōneus est.

- II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

(READING SELECTION 444)



Pilum

*ad ē
tū
piat*

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō*, *I love*

SINGULAR

1. *amāveram*, *I had loved*
2. *amāverās*, *you had loved*
3. *amāverat*, *he had loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverāmus*, *we had loved*
2. *amāverātis*, *you had loved*
3. *amāverant*, *they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. *amāverō*, *I shall have loved*
2. *amāveris*, *you will have loved*
3. *amāverit*, *he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverimus*, *we shall have loved*
2. *amāveritis*, *you will have loved*
3. *amāverint*, *they will have loved*

- i. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem *amāv-* and *-eram*; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and *-erō*. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + bam .
Future Tense,	Present stem + bō .
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + eram .
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + erō .

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

laudō	vocō	parō	oppugnō	servō
culpō	convocō	dō	portō	superō

I. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101.

VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, ¹ <i>hasten</i> (usually with an infinitive; never followed by <i>ad</i> and the acc.).	ferus, a, um, <i>wild, barbarous.</i>
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>capture, take by storm.</i>	impedimentum, i, n., <i>hindrance; (plur.), baggage.</i>
mox, adv., <i>soon.</i>	vicus, i, m., <i>village.</i>
	ad, prep. with acc., <i>to, towards, near.</i>

¹ The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in *-um*, or the future active participle in *-ūrus*, if they occur, are used.

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolas oppidi superaverunt.
 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Galli parabunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolas pilis armavit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae peritō dedērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocabant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparare mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedimenta in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēgīnam portābant. 7. Rēgīnae cōpiae ferae erant. 8. Ad¹ oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vicōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad¹ impedimenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam² pecūniā incolis nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ near.² = much.

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION
AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in ē are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS: **moneō**, *I advise, warn*, **monēre**, **monui**, **monitus**
videō, *I see*, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visus**

PRES.	moneō , <i>I warn</i>	videō , <i>I see</i>
IMPF.	monēbam , <i>I warned</i>	vidēbam , <i>I saw</i>
FUT.	monēbō , <i>I shall warn</i>	vidēbō , <i>I shall see</i>
PERF.	monui , <i>I have warned</i>	vidī , <i>I have seen</i>
PLUP.	monueram , <i>I had warned</i>	videram , <i>I had seen</i>
FUT. PF.	monuerō , <i>I shall have warned</i>	vidērō , <i>I shall have seen</i>

105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SING.	1. moneō , <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>
	2. monēs , <i>you advise, etc.</i>
	3. monet , <i>he advises, etc.</i>
PLUR.	1. monēmus , <i>we advise, etc.</i>
	2. monētis , <i>you advise, etc.</i>
	3. monent , <i>they advise, etc.</i>

1. Observe that the -ē- of the present stem, unlike the -ā- of **amō**, is retained before the personal ending -o of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of **moneō**? of **amō**?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

SINGULAR

1. *mónui*, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. *monuísti*, *you have advised, etc.*
3. *mónuit*, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. *monúimus*, *we have advised, etc.*
2. *monuístis*, *you have advised, etc.*
3. *monuérunt* (*monuere*), *they have advised, etc.*

1. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of *amō*. Note that the perfect stem *monu-* does not end in *v*, as in *amō*, perfect stem *amāv-*.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

*habeo, habēre, habui, habitus, I have, hold
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, I see*

108.

VOCABULARY

<i>moneō, monēre, monui, moni- tus, advise, warn.</i>	<i>move; castra movēre, break up camp.</i>
<i>habeo, habēre, habui, habitus, have, hold.</i>	<i>dīmicō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight, contend.</i>
<i>videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, see. terreō, terrēre, terrui, terri- tus, frighten, scare.</i>	<i>praeda, ae, f., booty, spoil. periculum, i, n., danger. cum, prep. with abl., with.</i>
<i>moveō, movēre, móvi, mótus,</i>	

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Saxīs tēlīs*¹ Galli cum Rōmānīs pugnābant.
 2. *Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant.* 3. *Ad portam liberōs portāvērunt.* 4. *Paucōs librōs amīcō meō dedī.* 5. *Rōmānī multa arma in hiberna portābunt.* 6. *Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?*

- II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins.
 2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my friend a book?

110.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Movēbat; vīdit; terruerat.* 2. *Vīderimus; mōvistī;*
habēbis. 3. *Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint.* 4. *Rōmānī*
cum Helvētiīs dimicabant. 5. *Periculum magnum oppidi*
incolās terruerat. 6. *Praedam in vīcis multam vīdērunt.*
 7. *Gallī cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant.* 8. *Vīdistīne tuum*
periculum? 9. *Pueri multa praemia habēbunt.* 10. *Rō-*
mānī gladiis et pilis agricolās terruērunt. 11. *Mox cōpiam*
frūmentī habuerit. 12. *Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.*

- II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have had.
 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have fought.
 3. The Gauls broke up camp.
 4. They had contended with the inhabitants.
 5. The messenger frightened the lieutenant by the story.
 6. There is great danger in wine.

¹ In apposition with *saxīs* (see 58).



Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

III. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in *-i-*.

112.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	dux , m., leader, general	miles , m., soldier	virtūs , f., virtue	caput , n., head	
Stem and Base } |	duc-	milit-	virtūt-	capit-	
		SINGULAR			CASE ENDINGS OF CONSO- NANT STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i>
NOM. dux	miles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN. ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT. duci	militi	virtūti	capiti	-i	-i
ACC. ducem	militem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
ABL. duce	milite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
		PLURAL			
NOM. ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN. ducum	militum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT. ducibus	militibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC. ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL. ducibus	militibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

I. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25). Both are obtained by dropping the ending *-is* of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux, *ducis*, m., *leader, general*. **rēx**, *rēgis*, m., *king*.
miles, *militis*, m., *soldier*. **fuga**, ae, f., *flight*.
eques, *equitis*, m., *horseman*; *in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus*,
(plur.) cavalry, cavalrymen. *put to flight*.
virtūs, *virtūtis*, f., *manliness, augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus*,
bravery, virtue. *increase, enlarge*.
caput, *capitis*, n., *head*.

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs feris dimicābant? 3. Perīculum fili videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās perītōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castris vīderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniām mox filiae?
- II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters.
2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers.
3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Capitibus; virtūtī; capita. 2. Eques equum laudābat. 3. Mīlitēs impedimenta in castra portāverant.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium mīlitum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vīdimus. 7. Virtūs mīlitum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est mīlitum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiīs equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Mīlitibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹ cōpia.

(READING SELECTION 445)



Eques

LESSON 16

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i> ¹	homō, m., <i>man</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>
Stem and Base }	cōnsul-	homin-	patr-	corpor-

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōsulī	homini	patrī	corporī
ACC.	cōsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōsule	homine	patre	.corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

- Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
- Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum.**

¹ The title of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following:

1. **Dux victoriā laetus est,** *the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. **Hominēs cibi inopiā labōrabant,** *the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (*a*) that the ablatives *victoriā, inopiā*, express the *cause or reason*; (*b*) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of, on account of, from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. RULE.—**Ablative of Cause.**—*Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.¹*

119.

VOCABULARY

cōsul, cōsulis, m., <i>consul.</i>	tempus, temporis, n., <i>time, season.</i>
homō, hominis, m., <i>man.</i>	vulnus, vulneris, n., <i>wound.</i>
pater, patris, m., <i>father.</i>	vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>wound.</i>
corpus, corporis, n., <i>body.</i>	labōrō, āre, āvi, ātūrus, <i>work, suffer.</i>
flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river.</i>	
pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot.</i>	
pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot-soldier;</i>	trāns, prep. with acc., <i>across, over.</i>
plur., <i>infantry.</i>	

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat. 2. Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus. 3. Militēs perīti in castra arma portāvērunt. 4. Ducī fidō magnam pecūniām Rōmāni dederant. 5. Magna cōpia frūmentī mox in vīcō erit. 6. Cūr ad portās oppidi tēla portāvit?

¹ This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus mīlitum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidi. 6. Miles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōnsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pilis vulnerāvērunt. 9. Militēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs militēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Coins of Caesar

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN -I.

122.

STEMS IN -I-

Paradigms

	collis , m., hill	caedēs , f., slaughter	mōns , m., mountain	animal , n., animal
--	-----------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

Stem	colli-	caedi-	monti-	animāli-
Base	coll-	caed-	mont-	animāl-

SINGULAR					CASE ENDINGS OF -I- STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i>	
Nom. collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)		
Gen. collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is	-is	
Dat. colli	caedi	monti	animāli	-i	-i	
Acc. collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em		
Abl. colle	caede	monte	animāli	-e		-i

PLURAL

Nom. collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
Gen. collium	caedium	montium	animālium	-ium	-ium
Dat. collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc. collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālia	-is, -ēs	-ia
Abl. collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in -i and in -e, though usually in -i: *nāvis, ship; ignis, fire; civis, citizen; turris, tower; finis, end; avis, bird.* All neuter -i- stems have the ablative singular in -i. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in -im: *turris, turrim, tower.*
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra, beautiful city; animal magnum, large animal.*

123. Since nouns with -i- stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have -i- stems. The following classes have -i- stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. *Nouns in -is and -ēs, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.*
2. *Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.*
3. *Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x following a consonant.*
4. *Nouns in -ns and -rs.*

124. Decline the following:

<i>mare, maris, n., sea.</i>	<i>nōmen, nōminis, n., name.</i>
<i>urbs, urbis, f., city.</i>	<i>pars, partis, f., part.</i>
<i>miles, militis, m., soldier.</i>	<i>pōns, pontis, m., bridge.</i>
<i>hostis, hostis, m. and f., enemy (usually plural).</i>	<i>sedile, sedilis, n., seat.</i>

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with -i- stems.)

<i>collis, collis, m., hill.</i>	<i>animal, animālis, n., animal.</i>
<i>caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter.</i>	<i>nāvis, nāvis, f., ship.</i>
<i>mōns, montis, m., mountain.</i>	<i>per, prep. with acc. through, by-means-of.</i>
<i>laetus, a, um, glad.</i>	<i>dē, prep. with abl., down from, from, concerning.</i>
<i>occupō, āre, āvi, ātus, take- possession-of, seize, occupy.</i>	

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Mei patris amīcus vulnere labōrāvit.* 2. *Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit.* 3. *Gallī equitum peritōrum inopiā labōrābant.* 4. *Multa vulnera in corporibus mīlitum vīdistī.* 5. *Peditēs trāns flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt.* 6. *Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.*

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of a skillful leader. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Militēs dē monte in vīcum impedimenta portābant.* 2. *In nāvibus erant nautae multī et validī.* 3. *Nōnne militēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt?* 4. *Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum.* 5. *Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit.* 6. *In mari sunt nāvēs pulchrae.* 7. *Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat.* 8. *In monte erant multa et fera animālia.* 9. *Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat.* 10. *Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.*

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go² from the hill into the broad fields.

¹ *Many lazy* = *many and lazy.* See 127, I, 2, 8.

² *ire.*

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE
OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender.—For the general rules for gender see 28.

The rules for gender for the third declension are these, but there are many exceptions:

1. **Masculine.**—Masculine are nouns in -*ō* (genitive -*ōnis*), -*or* (genitive -*ōris*), -*tor* (genitive -*tōris*), -*er* (genitive -*ris*; cf. *pater*, *patris*), -*es* (genitive -*itis*), -*eps* (genitive -*ipis*), -*ex* (genitive -*icis*).
2. **Feminine.**—Feminine are nouns in -*tās*, -*tūs*, -*rs* (genitive -*rtis*; cf. *ars*, *artis*), -*is* and -*ēs* (if genitive is in -*is*), -*dō* or -*gō* (genitive -*dinis*, -*ginis*), and -*iō* (genitive -*iōnis*).
3. **Neuter.**—Neuter are nouns in -*al* (genitive -*alis*), -*en*, -*ar* (genitive -*aris*), -*ur* (genitive -*oris*), -*us* (genitive -*eris* or -*oris*), -*t*, -*e* (genitive -*is*).
4. What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions?

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	equēs	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	miles	pedes	urbs
cōnsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs

130. Examine the following :

1. *Hieme labōrāmus, in winter we work.*
2. *Decem mēnsibus multās urbēs vidit, within ten months he saw many cities.*
3. *Primā lūce hostēs in fugam dedērunt, at daybreak they put the enemy to flight.*

Observe that the ablatives *hieme*, *decem mēnsibus*, *primā lūce*, tell *when* or *within what time* the action of the verb took place, and that no preposition is used in Latin.

131. RULE.—**Ablative of Time.**—*Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

132.

VOCABULARY

<i>nox, noctis, f.</i> (gen. plur. <i>noctium</i>), <i>night.</i>	<i>annus, I, m., year.</i>
	<i>prīmus, a, um, first.</i>
<i>hiems, hiemis, f., winter.</i>	<i>decem, indecl., ten.</i>
<i>aestās, aestātis, f., summer.</i>	<i>quattuor, indecl., four.</i>
<i>lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.</i>	<i>multā nocte, late at night.</i>

133.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Aestāte agrī pulchrī incolās urbīs dēlectant.*
2. *Primā lūce¹ multōs montēs vidimus.* 3. *Hostēs tēlis equitēs vulnerābant.* 4. *Quattuor annīs multa oppida hostium dux expugnāverat.* 5. *Cibi inopiā Gallī hieme labōrābant.* 6. *Multā nocte cōnsul peditēs in castra convocābit.* 7. *Multās urbēs decem annīs dux Helvētiōrum occupāverat.* 8. *Primō annō belli multa oppida expugnāverat.* 9. *Prīma lūce hostēs in castris erant.*

- II. 1. He captured the city by-means-of his cavalry.
2. At night the enemy hastened to go toward the Romans'

¹ *Prīma lūce, at daybreak.*

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹ 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At day-break we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long. 7. In ten years there are ten summers.

(READING SELECTION 446)

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural **pulchra** means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Head of Julius Cæsar
(From a silver coin, 38-36 B.C.)

135.

THE HELVETIAN WAR

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136.

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION

1. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.
3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.
4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.
5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I
READING LESSON
DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above, 136, 1-4.*)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtæ Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētii sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrénæōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Oceani quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniām pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 10.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of *incolō*. Can you not infer its meaning from *incola*?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer.*

139.

Paradigms

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SINGULAR

1. amō, *I love, am loving, do love*
2. amās, *you love, etc.*
3. amat, *he loves, etc.*

PERSONAL ENDINGS

-ō
-s
-t

PLURAL

1. amāmus, *we love, etc.*
2. amātis, *you love, etc.*
3. amant, *they love, etc.*

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1. amor, *I am loved, am being loved*
2. amāris, amāre, *you are loved, etc.*
3. amātur, *he is loved, etc.*

-r
-ris, -re
-tur

PLURAL

1. amāmur, *we are loved, etc.*
2. amāmini, *you are loved, etc.*
3. amantur, *they are loved, etc.*

-mur
-mini
-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE

SECOND CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1.	<i>moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise</i>	-ō
2.	<i>monēs, you advise, etc.</i>	-s
3.	<i>monet, he advises, etc.</i>	-t

PLURAL

1.	<i>monēmus, we advise, etc.</i>	-mus
2.	<i>monētis, you advise, etc.</i>	-tis
3.	<i>monēnt, they advise, etc.</i>	-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1.	<i>moneor, I am advised, am being advised</i>	-r
2.	<i>monēris, monēre, you are advised, etc.</i>	-ris, -re
3.	<i>monētur, he is advised, etc.</i>	-tur

PLURAL

1.	<i>monēmur, we are advised, etc.</i>	-mur
2.	<i>monēmini, you are advised, etc.</i>	-mini
3.	<i>monentur, they are advised, etc.</i>	-ntur

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

*laudō, I praise**vocō, I call**videō, I see**terreō, I frighten*

141. Examine the following :

1. **Coniūrāti Caesarem necant**, *the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. **Caesar ā coniūrātis necātur**, *Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. **Caesar gladiō necātur**, *Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive :

- a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
- b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ā**.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE.—**Agency with the Passive Voice.**—*The personal agent with a passive verb (*i.e.* the person by whom something is done) is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar , <i>aris</i> , m., <i>Caesar</i> .	celeritās , <i>ātis</i> , f., <i>speed, quickness.</i>
legiō , <i>ōnis</i> , f., <i>legion</i> (about 5000 soldiers).	incitō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.</i>
necō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>kill.</i>	ē , <i>ex</i> , ¹ <i>prep. with abl., from, of.</i>
ā , <i>ab</i> , ¹ <i>prep. with abl., from, by.</i>	<i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> , ¹ <i>prep. with abl., out of, from.</i>
ob , <i>prep. with acc., on-account-of, for.</i>	propter , <i>prep. with acc., on-account-of, for.</i>

¹ Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use **ab** or **ex**; use **ā** or **ē** before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlis Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvīs in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōnsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum miserī sūmus.

II. 1. In winter the nights are long. 2. Caesar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēmini. 2. Incitant, incitātur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar militēs convocat. 4. Militēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob² virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter² virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibi cōpia ā militib⁹ in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte mīlitum incolae oppidī incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā mīlitib⁹ in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains to the city.

¹ over.

² In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, ob or propter with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. Ob is used especially in connection with rem or causam.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND
SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>amābar, I was loved, was
being loved</i>
2. <i>amābāris, amābare, you
were loved, etc.</i>
3. <i>amābatur, he was loved,
etc.</i> | 1. <i>monēbar, I was advised,
wds being advised</i>
2. <i>monēbāris, monēbāre, you
were advised, etc.</i>
3. <i>monēbātur, he was ad-
vised, etc.</i> |
|---|---|

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>amābāmur, we were loved,
etc.</i>
2. <i>amābāmini, you were
loved, etc.</i>
3. <i>amābantur, they were
loved, etc.</i> | 1. <i>monēbāmur, we were ad-
vised, etc.</i>
2. <i>monēbāmini, you were ad-
vised, etc.</i>
3. <i>monēbantur, they were
advised, etc.</i> |
|--|---|

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

- | |
|--|
| 1. <i>amābor, I shall be loved</i>
2. <i>amāberis, amābere, you
will be loved</i>
3. <i>amābitur, he will be loved</i> |
|--|

SINGULAR

- | |
|--|
| 1. <i>monēbor, I shall be ad-
vised</i>
2. <i>monēberis, monēbere, you
will be advised</i>
3. <i>monēbitur, he will be ad-
vised</i> |
|--|

PLURAL

1. *amābimur, we shall be loved*
2. *amābimini, you will be loved*
3. *amābuntur, they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. *monēbimur, we shall be advised*
2. *monēbimini, you will be advised*
3. *monēbuntur, they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is *a* in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems *amā-* and *monē-* by adding *-bar* and *-bor* respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. *Agricola cum cūrā arat, the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
2. *Agricola magnā cum¹ cūrā arat* } *the farmer plows with*
3. *Agricola magnā cūrā arat* } *great care (very carefully)*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions *cum cūrā*, *magnā cum cūrā*, *magnā cūrā*, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That *magnā cum cūrā* and *magnā cūrā* are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

¹ Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE.—Ablative of Manner.—*Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

140.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>studium, I, n., seal, eagerness.</i> | <i>imperātor, ôris, m., general,</i> |
| <i>cûra, ae, f., care.</i> | <i>commander in chief.</i> |
| <i>obses, obsidis, m. and f., host-</i> | <i>conlocô, âre, âvi, âtus, place,</i> |
| <i>age, pledge.</i> | <i>station.</i> |
| <i>multitûdô, multitûdinis, f.,</i> | <i>compleô, complêre, complêvi,</i> |
| <i>multitude, crowd.</i> | <i>complêtus, fill up, complete.</i> |
| <i>imperium, I, n., command,</i> | <i>diû, adv., long, for a long</i> |
| <i>power.</i> | <i>time.</i> |

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Equitum celeritate Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbē pars ā Gallis occupātur. 6. Militēs ā rēge in hiberna convocantur.

- II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took possession of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

- I. i. Laudābat, laudābatur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur.
2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In
agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum
cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus
dīmicābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātōre magnō studiō
oppugnābātur. 7. Caesari imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem
equitūm multitudine complēvit. 9. Līberōs multōs obsidēs
Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?

II. 1. You will see, you will be seen. 2. Are we praising? he will be blamed. 3. They were wounded by the infantry with swords. 4. At daybreak the Romans fought eagerly. 5. A large part of the arms was carried very carefully into camp. 6. Many soldiers were seen near the bridge.

(READING SELECTION 447)

LESSON 22

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE
OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

152. Review 39, 81, 86. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all Latin verbs have compound forms. They employ the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future tenses respectively of the auxiliary verb **sum**. The participle is like an adjective in form and syntax, and its endings change to agree with the gender and number of the subject of the verb.

Paradigms

PERFECT PASSIVE OF **amō**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1.	amātus,	<i>sum, I have been loved, I was loved</i>	amātl,	<i>sumus</i>
2.	a, um	<i>es</i>	ae, a	<i>estis</i>
3.		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

1.	amātus,	<i>eram, I had been loved</i>	amātl,	<i>erāmus</i>
2.	a, um	<i>erās</i>	ae, a	<i>erātis</i>
3.		<i>erat</i>		<i>erant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	amātus, { erō, <i>I shall have been loved</i>	amāti, { erimus
2.	a, um { eris	ae, a { eritis
3.	erit	erunt

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of **moneō**, **videō**, **portō**, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like **bonus**, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,

*I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum
we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus
the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat
the girl has been loved, puella amāta est*

3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship, alliance.</i>	civis, civis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>
pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>	civitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizenship.</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i>	cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>strengthen, establish.</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road, journey (501).</i>	contineō, continēre, continuī, <i>contentus, hold together, restrain, hem in, bound.</i>
ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i>	

154.

EXERCISES

1. i. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Civēs ob amicitiam laudavimus. 5. Galli montibus et fluminibus continēbantur. 6. Multa oppida decem mēnsibus occupata erant. 7. Magna Helvētiōrum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Multum frumentum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar militēs in castris habēbat. 10. Multī hominēs ā Rōmānīs erant necati. 11. Multos cīvis in Italiā vidi-
mus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magnō cum studiō oppugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed.
 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned.
 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls.
 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders.
 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city.
 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery.
 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march.
 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.



Civis

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

ācer, sharp, keen, eager

Stem *ācri-*
Base *ācr-*

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. <i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN. <i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT. <i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>
ACC. <i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL. <i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācri</i>
*		
	PLURAL	
NOM. <i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN. <i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT. <i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC. <i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācris, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL. <i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

- i. Note that adjectives of this declension have *-i*- stems, and that the ablative singular ends in *-i*. Review 122.

156. Examine the following:

- i. *Helvēti Gallōs virtūte superant, the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. *Vir nōmine, nōn factis, amicus erat, the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives *virtūte, nōmine, factis*, tell *in what respect* the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE.—Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

<i>altus, a, um, high, deep.</i>	<i>finis, finis, m., end; (plur.) boundary, territory.</i>
<i>angustus, a, um, narrow, con- tracted.</i>	<i>finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjoining; finitimi, òrum, m., neighbors.</i>
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.</i>	<i>quod, conj., because.</i>
<i>acer, acris, acre, keen, sharp, eager, fierce.</i>	<i>-que, and, an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected.</i>
<i>equester, equestris, equestre, of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).</i>	<i>magnitudò, inis, f., greatness, size.</i>

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Dux filium propter virtūtem laudāverat.* 2. *Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis civitātibus erat cōfirmāta.* 3. *Multā nocte cōpiae ex agrīs in castra convocābantur.* 4. *Militēs hieme in hiberna convocāti sunt.* 5. *Multi incolae gladiis equitum vulnerāti erant.*

- II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

160.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum finibus erant.
 2. Iter per finēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmāni virtūte, nōn magnitūdine corporis, Gallōs superābant.
 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesarē laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt.
 7. Ācrēs perītaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōnsulīs. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō ācrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētii ā ducib⁹ incitātī sunt? Quod altis montibus et flūminib⁹ lātis continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestri proeliō superātī erant.

- II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Notice to which word -que is added. Translate -que before the word to which it is attached.



Galli

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following:

facilis, easy

Stem **facili-**
Base **facil-**

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine and Feminine</i>		<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	facilis	facile
GEN.	facilis	facilis
DAT.	facili	facili
ACC.	facilem	facile
ABL.	facili	facili

PLURAL

NOM.	facilēs	facilia
GEN.	faciliūm	faciliūm
DAT.	faciliib⁹s	faciliib⁹s
ACC.	facili⁹s (ēs)	facilia
ABL.	faciliib⁹s	faciliib⁹s

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following:

audāx, bold

Stem **audāci-**
Base **audāc-**

SINGULAR

<i>Masculine and Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. audāx	audāx
GEN. audācis	audācis
DAT. audāci	audāci
ACC. audācem	audāx
ABL. audāci (e)	audāci (e)

PLURAL

NOM. audācēs	audācia
GEN. audāciūm	audāciūm
DAT. audāciibus	audāciibus
ACC. audācis (ēs)	audācia
ABL. audāciibus	audāciibus

Observe

- That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
- That adjectives of the third declension ending in -er have three terminations, those in -is two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
- That they have -i- stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only -i in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following:

- Filius patri similis erat, the son was like his father.*
- Locus castris idōneus erat, the place was suitable for a camp.*

Observe that the datives *patri* and *castris* are related to the adjectives *similis* and *idōneus*.

163. RULE.—**Dative with Adjectives.**—*The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.**VOCABULARY**

<i>fortis, e, brave, strong.</i>	<i>omnis, e, all, every, the whole.</i>
<i>similis, e, like, similar.</i>	<i>brevis, e, brief, short.</i>
<i>dissimilis, e, dissimilar,</i> <i>unlike.</i>	<i>pār, gen. paris, equal (to).</i>
<i>facilis, e, easy.</i>	<i>vetus,¹ gen. veteris, old, ancient.</i>
<i>difficilis, e, difficult.</i>	<i>gēns, gentis, f., race, nation.</i>
	<i>populus, i, m., people.</i>

165.**REVIEW EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Helvētiī flūminibus altīs continēbantur.* 2. *Ad flūmen iter angustum erat.* 3. *Cūr finitimi nostri terren-*
tur? Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmā-
vimus. 4. *Caesar equestrībus proeliis Gallōs superāvit.*
5. *Peditēs nostri altis flūminibus terrēbantur.* 6. *Gallōs*
magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.

II. 1. There are many beautiful ships on the sea. 2. Our cavalry were fierce in battle. 3. Why were they frightened? Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains. 4. The bridges have been taken-possession-of by the enemy.

166.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs.* 2. *Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant.* 3. *Militēs*

¹ This is not an -i- stem; its ablative singular is formed in -e.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevi tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētii multitūdine hominum populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā milite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multis imperatōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Finitimī nostri omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people² was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

(READING SELECTION 448)

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorix, qui³ princeps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūratiōnem nobilitatis fēcit (*formed*) et cum finitimi cīvitātibus pācem amicitiamque cōfirmāvit. Helvētī undique nātūrā locī continentur, ūnā ex parte⁴ flūmine Rhēnō, qui agrum Helvētiū ā Germānīs dīvidit,⁵ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Quā dē causā⁶ fīnēs Helvētiōrum angusti erant prō⁷ multitūdine hominum, et ēmigrāre⁸ cupiēbant.⁹

¹ Use -que. ²populus Rōmānus. ³The relative pronoun who, which, that. ⁴ ūnā ex parte, on one side. ⁵ Third person singular of dīvidō. ⁶ Quā dē causā, for this reason. ⁷ in proportion to. ⁸ to emigrate. ⁹ Third person plural imperfect of cupiō.

LESSON 26

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

PRIN. PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT SINGULAR	FUTURE PERFECT
1. <i>fuī, I have been,</i> <i>I was</i>	<i>fuerām, I had been</i>	<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>
2. <i>fuistī</i>	<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fueris</i>
3. <i>fuīt</i>	<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerit</i>
	PLURAL	
1. <i>fuīmus</i>	<i>fuerāmūs</i>	<i>fuerimūs</i>
2. <i>fuīstis</i>	<i>fuerātīs</i>	<i>fueritīs</i>
3. <i>fuērunt (fuēre)</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

- Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-erām** and **-erō**.
- Are the personal endings regular?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb?

pugnō	conlocō	videō	laudō	superō	mātūrō
expugnō	cōnfirmō	contineō	culpō	armō	incitō
oppugnō	comparō	compleō	servō	occupō	labōrō
vocō	augeō	moveō	dēlectō	vulnerō	necō
convocō	habeō	moneō	dō	dīmicō	terreō
			portō		

- What is the force of **con (com)** in a compound verb?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of *incitō*. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of *habeō* in the second person and *augeō* in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: *incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, arouse, urge on*

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
Present Stem incitā-	PRES.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing. incitat} \\ \text{Plur. incitant} \end{array} \right.$	incitātur	
	IMP.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing. incitābat} \\ \text{Plur. incitābant} \end{array} \right.$	incitābatur	
	FUT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plur.} \end{array} \right.$	incitābantur	
Perfect Stem incitāv-	PERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plur.} \end{array} \right.$		
	PLUP.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plur.} \end{array} \right.$		
	FUT.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plur.} \end{array} \right.$		
	PERF.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sing.} \\ \text{Plur.} \end{array} \right.$		

} Participial Stem incitāt-

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, *lay* reliquus, a, um, *the-rest-of, waste, ravage.* remaining.

libertās, ātis, f., *liberty, free-dom.* potēns, potentis, *able, power-ful.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in behalf of, for.*

172.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuitis. 2. Gallōrum fīnēs ab equitibus vāstāti erant. 3. Reliquī hostēs prō libertātē diū pugnāverant. 4. Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs.

5. Paucis annis bellō finitimos Helvētii superāverant.
6. Prō fēminis liberisque magnō cum studiō pugnābant.
7. Reliquae in Galliā gentes ā nostris finitimis incitātae sunt.
8. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus finēs Helvētiōrum vāstāre mātūrabit.
9. Legiōnēs populi Rōmānī magnitudine corporis Gallōrum terrēbantur.
10. Servus dominō virtute erat similis.
11. Altis montibus et lātis flūminibus oppidum continētur.

11. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge.
2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste.
3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful.
4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed.
5. The citizens will fight for the general.
6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight.
7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173.

dūcō, I lead

PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *dūcō* (518).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of *dūcō* with the present of *moneō* and *amō* in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of **dūcō** with the future of **moneō**, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short-e*, that of the second conjugation *long-e*.
6. Like **dūcō** conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of **mittō**, *send*, and **vincō**, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

dūcō , ere, dūxi , <i>ductus</i> , <i>lead</i> .	gerō , <i>gerere</i> , gessi , <i>gestus</i> ,
mittō , ere, misī , <i>missus</i> , <i>send</i> .	<i>carry on, wage</i> .
vincō , ere, vici , <i>victus</i> , <i>con-</i>	incolō , ere, <i>incolui</i> , —, <i>in-</i>
<i>quer</i> .	<i>habit</i> .
relinquō , ere, <i>reliqui</i> , <i>relictus</i> ,	<i>neque . . . neque, neither . . .</i>
<i>leave behind, leave</i> .	<i>nor</i> .
contendō , ere, <i>contendi</i> , <i>con-</i>	saepe , adv., <i>often, frequently</i> .
<i>tentum, struggle, strive,</i>	
<i>hasten, hurry, march</i> .	

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmenti in agris est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābuli Gallōrum sunt incitāti. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiis similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitūdine hominum erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vīci ab hostibus vāstāti erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertātē magnō studiō pugnābimus.
- II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētiī saepe cum finitimiī contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castris erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētiī magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincentur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā īnsulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiis Rōmānōs superābant.
- II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people were waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

(READING SELECTION 449)

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in iō in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

*capiō, take*PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capiō* (520).

- i. Observe that the conjugation of *capiō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of **capiō** differ from **dūcō**?
3. Like **capiō** conjugate these tenses of **fugiō**, *flee*, and **iaciō**, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **capiō** (518, 520).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of **iaciō**, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

iaciō , <i>iacere</i> , <i>iēci</i> , <i>iactus</i> ,	interficiō , <i>interficere</i> , <i>interfēci</i> , <i>throw, hurl.</i>	interfēctus , <i>kill.</i>
capiō , <i>capere</i> , <i>cēpi</i> , <i>captus</i> ,	trādūcō (<i>trāns + dūcō</i>), <i>ere</i> ,	trādūxi , <i>trāductus</i> , <i>lead</i>
<i>take, seize, capture, form</i>	<i>over, transport.</i>	
fugiō , <i>fugere</i> , <i>fūgl</i> , —, <i>flee</i> ,		
<i>run away.</i>		
faciō , <i>facere</i> , <i>fēci</i> , <i>factus</i> , <i>do</i> ,	cōnsilium , <i>I.</i> , n., <i>advice, prudence, plan.</i>	
<i>make; iter facere, march;</i>		
<i>proelium facere, fight a battle.</i>	moenia , <i>moenium</i> , n. (plur.),	<i>walls, fortifications.</i>

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquunt.* 2. *Neque pedibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt.* 3. *Estne iter ad oppidum facile?* 4. *Rōmāni in hostium finēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant.* 5. *Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōnsule vincentur.*

- II. 1. The Helvetii often carried on war with their

- neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūci-mur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum finēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostib⁹ cōpiam frūmenti capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte pauci peditēs imperfecti erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōnsilium proeli lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Galli lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 10. Cōnsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcit. 11. Multi equitēs ā cōpiis nostris interficiēntur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.² 5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their⁴ territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used⁵ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = mak. a march. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ used to form: use the imperfect of capiō.



Caricature of Soldier
(Pompeii)

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE
INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FIRST CONJ.	<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amāri, to be loved</i>
SECOND CONJ.	<i>monēre, to advise</i>	<i>monēri, to be advised</i>
THIRD CONJ.	<i>dūcere, to lead</i> <i>capere, to take</i>	<i>dūci, to be led</i> <i>capi, to be taken</i>
FOURTH CONJ.	<i>audīre, to hear</i>	<i>audīri, to be heard</i>

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final *-e* to *-i*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-i*.

183. Examine the following :

1. *Mātūrat militēs convocāre, he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
 2. *Laudāri est grātum, to be praised is pleasant.*
 3. *Incolās armāri iubet, he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
 4. *Omnēs primi esse cupimus, we all wish to be first.*
 5. *Dēbet interfici, he ought to be killed.*
 6. *Fortis esse dicitur, he is said to be brave.*
 7. *Filiōs bonōs esse cupimus, we wish our sons to be good.*
- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
- b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of *est*. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.

- c. In 3, observe that *incolās*, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So *filiōs* in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective *primi* agrees with the subject of the main verb, *cupimus*, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

3	<i>dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, say,</i>	<i>cōstituō, cōstituere, cō-</i>
	<i>speak, tell.</i>	<i>stituī, cōstitūtus, place,</i>
2	<i>iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus,</i>	<i>station, determine, appoint.</i>
	<i>order, bid.</i>	<i>parātus, a, um (parō), pre-</i>
2	<i>dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus,</i>	<i>pared, ready. [name.</i>
	<i>owe, ought.</i>	<i>appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, call,</i>
3	<i>cupiō, cupere, cupiū (il), cu-</i>	<i>auxiliū, i, n., aid, help.</i>
	<i>pitus, wish, desire.</i>	<i>numerūs, i, m., number.</i>

186.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Vir peritus esse dēbet.* 2. *Pater filium fortē esse cupit.* 3. *Helvētiī lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt.* 4. *Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre.*

5. Helvētiī, inopiā cibī permōti (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Galli cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātū auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amīcus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētiis, incolis Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dīcēbantur. 12. Cōnsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATIONS OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētiī auctōritātē Orgetorīgis permōti¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerū cōpiamque frūmentī comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfīrmāvērunt, et ad finiti-mās cīvitātēs Orgetorīgem. lēgātū misērunt. Casticus Sēquānus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amīcus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, prīcipēs in suīs (*their*) cīvitātibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiam in mātrimōniū dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīcipēs potentium cīvitātū inter sē³ iūsiūrandū dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² for. ³ *inter sē, one another* (literally, *among themselves*).

LESSON 31

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is.* *idem*

188.

*Is, ea, id*As adjective, *this, that*; plur., *these, those*.As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it*; plur., *these, those, they*.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iīl</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN. <i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
ACC. <i>eūm</i>	<i>eām</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

- i. In what cases do the endings differ from those of *bonus* (62)? The stem is -e- or -i-.

189.

Idem (*is + dem*), *the same*

SINGULAR		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. <i>idem</i>	<i>éadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
GEN. <i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
DAT. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
ACC. <i>eūndem</i>	<i>eāndem</i>	<i>idem</i>
ABL. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

PLURAL		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. <i>eīdem (idem)</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
GEN. <i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT. <i>eīsdem (idem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (idem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (idem)</i>
ACC. <i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>éadem</i>
ABL. <i>eīsdem (idem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (idem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (idem)</i>

1. Observe that, in **Idem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

1. **Is miles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised*.
 2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that (man)*, i.e. *him*.
 3. **Amīcum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend* (i.e. *the friend of him*).
 4. **Amīcum eōrum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend* (i.e. *the friend of them*).
- a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what man* is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid*.
 - b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
 - c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eōrum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
 - d. Decline together : **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is miles**.
 - e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**. See also 196, c.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

NOM. this, that ; he, she, it.

GEN. of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its.

DAT. to *or* for this *or* that; to *or* for him, her, it.

ACC. this, that; him, her, it.

ABL. from, with, by this *or* that; from, with, by him, her, it.

PLURAL

NOM. these, those ; they.

GEN. of these, of those ; of them, their.

DAT. to or for these or those ; to or for them.

ACC. these, those ; them.

ABL. from, with, by these or those ; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, I, m., *Labienus* (one mūrus, I, m., wall).

of Caesar's lieutenants). **permoveō**, ēre, permōvi, percohors, cohortis, f., cohort mōtus, influence, arouse.

(one of the subdivisions of the legion). **pōnō**, pōnere, posui, positus, place, pitch (a camp).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, defend, protect. **princeps**, principis, m., leader, chief.

et . . . et, both . . . and. **pugna**, ae, f., battle.

fortūna, ae, f., fortune, good fortune. **post**, prep. with acc., after, behind.

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Auxilium parāre dēbēmus. 2. Militēs fortēs esse cupiunt. 3. Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit. 5. Numerus nāvium magnus esse dīcitur. 6. Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eius; eārum; ei agricultae. 2. Eiusdem virī; eaedem cohortēs; in eādem urbe. 3. Caesar, princeps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat. 4. Eius militēs post

eam pugnam eum ob fortūnam laudāvērunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolis libertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Fortūna belli nōn semper eadem est. 7. Labiēnus eāsdem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vicit. 8. In eōrum vicō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucis mēnsibus multa proelia fēcit. 9. Helvētiī mūrōs eius oppidi magnā cum virtūte semper dēfendent. 10. Eōsdem militēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195. *qui, who, which, that, what*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quac</i>
GEN. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

- NOM. who, which, that, what.
- GEN. of whom, whose, of which, of what.
- DAT. to or for whom, which, or what.
- ACC. whom, which, that, what.
- ABL. from, with, by whom, which, or what.

196. Examine the following:

1. **Fēminaē quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt**, *the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. **Virōs qui in castris sunt laudat**, *he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. **Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit**, *the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. **Puella cui librum dedit fida est**, *the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. **Pilum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit**, *the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. **Is qui est fortis laudātur**, *he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*
 - a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; thus the antecedent of *quās* in 1 is *fēminaē*. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
 - b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, *quās* is accusative because it is the direct object of *vidēmus*; in 5, *quō* is ablative to express the instrument of the verb *vulnerātus sum*. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
 - c. In 6, *is* does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. *Is* is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of *is*.

197. RULE.—**Agreement of Relative Pronoun.**—*A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198.

VOCABULARY

<i>causa, ae, f., cause, case.</i>	<i>nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, an-</i>
<i>causam dicō, ere, dixi, dictus,</i>	<i>nounce, report.</i>
<i>plead (one's) case.</i>	<i>coepi, coepisse, coeptūrus sum</i>
<i>vinculum, i, n., chain.</i>	<i>(only in the perfect, plu-</i>
<i>ex vinculis, in chains.</i>	<i>perfect, and future perfect</i>
<i>poena, ae, f., punishment.</i>	<i>tense), began.</i>
<i>coniūrātiō, ūnis, f., conspiracy.</i>	<i>Orgetorix, Igis, m., Orgetorix.</i>

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum militēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eidem prīcipī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētiī et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius castra in eādem urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium militēs in hiberna contendent.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī causam coniūrātiōnis nūntiant quam Helvētiī fēcerunt. 2. Militēs quōs in Galliā habent in eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorix, qui eam coniūrātiōnem fēcerat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius coniūrātiō ab eis qui missi erant Caesari nūntiāta est. 5. Ob eam coniūrātiōnem Helvētiī, quōrum lēgāti ā Caesare convocāti erant, permōti sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis dicere poena est eius qui coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 7. Causa belli caedēs Rōmānorū fuit qui in eā urbe fuērunt. 8. Cum eis quōrum prīcipēs id fēcerant pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES **hic** AND **ille**. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. **hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN. huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT. huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC. hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

202. **ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN. illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT. illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC. illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL. illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

- i. Compare the endings of **ille** with those of **is** (188).

203. Examine the following:

1. **Hic puer omnia, illa puella pauca vīdit,** *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
 2. **Caesar et Pompēius erant Rōmānōrum principēs;** *ille in Gallia pugnābat, hīc in Ītaliā remanēbat,* *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
 3. **Nostri in castris erant,** *our men were in camp.*
- a.* Hic and ille are more emphatic than is (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, hic means *the latter*, ille means *the former*. Ille also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*; with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, i.
- b.* Decline together haec urbs, hoc flūmen.
- c.* In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives omnia, pauca, nostri, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; *i.e.* multa (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204

VOCABULARY

frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother.</i>	cōgō, ere, cōegl, cōactus, <i>collect, compel, force.</i>
mōrēs, mortis, f., <i>death.</i>	ēripō, ere, ēripui, ēreptus, <i>snatch away, save.</i>
cliēns, clientis, m., <i>vassal,</i> <i>dependent.</i>	sub, prep. with acc., <i>to the</i> <i>foot of;</i> with abl., <i>under,</i> <i>at the foot of.</i>
nātiō, nōnis, f., <i>nation.</i>	
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., <i>speech.</i>	
cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgnī- tus, <i>learn of, recognize.</i>	

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī qui coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dixit permōti sunt. 3. Causa eius poenae coniūrātiō quam fēcerat erat. 4. Orgetorīx, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallis fēcerant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ūrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hīc cliēns ex vinculis causam dicet. 3. Nostrī hāc ūrātiōne permōti (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitātēs quās diximus¹ lēgātōs ad illum ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illi ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorix, princeps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius pīncipis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illī quōs convocāvisti clientēs meī frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.² 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

¹ mention.² Accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipse. Iste. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, self

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>	<i>ipsarum</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>
DAT. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsos</i>	<i>ipsas</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

- Observe that *ipse* is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings *-ius* and *-i*. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
- Ipse** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, *vir ipse*, *the man himself*; *fēmina ipsa*, *the woman herself*; *proelium ipsum*, *the battle itself*; *urbēs ipsae*, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours.*

- Hic** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine), this (near me), my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; it means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours, your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. *Ille* is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that (of his or hers), that . . . yonder, yonder.*

2. Mention the pronouns that have *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-i* in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in *-ius* in the genitive and *-i* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-ius*). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (505), *other, another.*

alter, altera, alterum, one (of two), the other (of two).

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two).

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, any.

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, no, none.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, alone, sole, only.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole, all.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.

210. Examine the following:

1. *Nostris finibus eōs prohibēbat, he kept them from our territories.*
 2. *Cibō caruerat, he had lacked food.*
 3. *Ex eā parte vici discessit, he withdrew from that part of the village.*
- a. Observe that the ablatives *finibus*, *cibō*, and *parte* denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE.—Ablative of Separation.—Verbs meaning *to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc.,* are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation

takes place. **Ab** or **ex** with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with **careō** a preposition is never used.

212.

VOCABULARY

careō , ēre, carui, caritūrus,	ripa, ae, f., bank (of river).
lack, be in need of, be without.	alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (of two).
discēdō , ere, discessi, discessum, depart, withdraw.	alius . . . aliis, one . . . another.
liberō , āre, āvi, ātus, free (from), liberate.	alii . . . alii, some . . . others.
prohibeō , ēre, prohibui, prohibitus, keep away from.	alii aliam in partem, some in one direction, some in another.
prōvincia , ae, f., province.	

213.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. i. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētiī in illis castrīs ē periculō sunt ērepti. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorīgis prīncipis illius eum cōgnōsent. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuērunt. 5. Huic mīlitī arma pilum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūrātiōnem fēcerant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hic liber est meus; ille gladius est mīlitis; ubi est istud pilum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgāti quōs Helvētiī mīsērunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrāque ripā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā militibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Alii in rīpis alii in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētiōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus liberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae alii aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorix prīcipēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who² was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE quis

215. *audiō, hear*

PRIN. PARTS: *audiō, audire, audīvi, audītus*

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of *audiō* (519).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is long -i-; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of *audiō* with the corresponding forms of *capiō* (520). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ See 211.

² Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel *i* in the present tense of *audiō*, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of *audiō* are formed and conjugated exactly like those of *capiō*.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, who? which? what?

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>quis (qui)</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>
GEN.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>

PLURAL

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN.	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC.	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL.	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Quis hoc fēcit? who did this?</i> | <i>Used as an interrogative pronoun.</i> |
| 2. <i>Quid fēcisti? what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. <i>Qui (quis) vir hoc fēcit? what man did this?</i> | <i>Used as an interrogative adjective.</i> |
| 4. <i>Quam urbēm vidēs? what city do you see?</i> | |
| 5. <i>Quod dōnum amat puer? what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. *Quis* is sometimes used for *qui*.
- b. When used as a pronoun, *quis* and *quid* are used in place of *qui* and *quod*. As a pronoun it has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

<i>audiō, ire, audīvi, audītus,</i>	<i>cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., custom, habit.</i>
<i>mūniō, ire, mūnīvi, mūnītus,</i>	<i>clāmor, ḍris, m., shout, cry.</i>
<i>fortify.</i>	<i>labor, ḍris, m., work, labor.</i>
<i>veniō, ire, vēni, ventum,¹ come.</i>	<i>iūdīcīum, i, n., trial, judg- ment.</i>
<i>pūniō, ire, pūnīvi, pūnītus, punish.</i>	<i>undique, adv., from all sides.</i>

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste miles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētiī ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs alīi aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audīris; audiētur; vēnerātis. 2. Mūniēbātūr; pūnīvistī; pūnītae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs mīsimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlis vulnerātus est? Miles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdiciū undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum qui cum impedīmentīs veniēbant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

221. Ea cōsilia sunt Helvētiis per nūntiōs nūntiāta, et Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Coniūratiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam (*his*) familiā et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerū habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See page 107, footnote 2. ² Is this a relative or a demonstrative? ³ See 183, 2. ⁴ quam ob rem, therefore, wherefore.

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ per eius fugam incitāti sunt multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte multi rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

(READING SELECTION 452)

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -U-

cāsus, m., <i>chance, misfortune</i>	cornū, n., <i>horn, wing</i>	
Stem cāsu-	Stem cornu-	CASE ENDINGS
Base cās-	Base corn-	SINGULAR
SINGULAR	SINGULAR	Masculine Neuter
NOM. cāsus	cornū	-us -ū
GEN. cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs -ūs
DAT. cāsui (ū)	cornū	-ui (ū) -ū
ACC. cāsum	cornū	-um -ū
ABL. cāsū	cornū	-ū -ū
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL
NOM. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs -ua
GEN. cāsuum	cornuum	-uum -uum
DAT. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus -ibus
ACC. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs -ua
ABL. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus -ibus

1. A few words of this declension have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.
2. *Domus*, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 501.)

¹ officers, magistrates, nom. plur. ² mortuus est, died.

223. RULE. — **Gender.** — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.*

i. **Domus**, *house*, **Idūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis**, *brave army*; **tua manus**, *your hand*; **cornū dextrum**, *right wing*.

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus, ūs, m., *a falling*, *in* (ā) **dextrō cornū**, *on the chance, misfortune.* **right wing.**

domus, ūs, f., *house, home.* **in** (ā) **sinistrō cornū**, *on the exercitus*, ūs, m., *army.* **left wing.**

manus, ūs, f., *hand, band (of men).* **conveniō**, *ire, convēni, conventum, come together, assemble.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn, wing (of army).* **deus**, ī, m., *god.*



Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs militum audivit? 2. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Principis est cōnsuētūdō eōs qui coniūrātiōnēm faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quām urbē mūnient et qui eam dēfēndent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illi pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitū ad exercitū vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portū nāvēs hostiū missae sunt. 4. Qui mīlitēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōnsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī qui ad Caesarem vēnerant ei cāsum exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbēs conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmicāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitib⁹ vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portū habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

dūcō ³	audiō ⁴	iaciō	coepi
trādūcō	permōveō ²	fugiō	nūntiō
veniō ⁴	pōnō ³	faciō ²	ēripiō
conveniō	careō ²	interficiō	cōgō
mittō ³	yincō ³	dicō	cōgnōscō
dēbeō ²	relinquō ⁴	iubeō ²	discēdō ²
cupiō ³	contenō	appellō	liberō
capiō ³	gerō	cōstituō	pūniō ⁴
prohibeō ²	incolō	dēfendō	mūniō

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes *trāns* and *con*, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether *cupiō* belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of *iubeō* in the first person, *interficiō* in the second person, *mūniō* in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of *dō*,

iubeō, cōgnoscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following:

1. **Miles gladium habet,** } *the soldier has a sword.*
 2. **Militi est gladius,**

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of *est*. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE.—Dative of Possession. — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

- I. 1. Facient; convocabāmur; cōgēminī. 2. Audiēbāris;
capiēris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; miserat; coepisti. 5. Pōnētis;
 capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur.
 7. Reliquerātis; relinquētis; dictum erat. 8. Liberātae
 sunt; habuerās; contendēbātis. 9. Eripiēris; trādūcētur;
 monentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūni-
 ris; cōgitur.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus amicus domum habet. 2. Meō amicō est domus. 3. Helvētiī, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidi mox venient. 4. Exercitus magnus Caesari fuit. 5. Caesar magnum exercitum habuit. 6. Magnam frumenti cōpiam habent. 7. Magna frumenti cōpia eis est. 8. Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent. 9. Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs. 10. Militi pulchrum gladium dedit.

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB **eō**. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234.

IRREGULAR VERB **eō, eo**PRIN. PARTS: **eō, ire, ii, itum**²

Learn all tenses of the indicative of **eō** (525).

- i. Notice that the -i-, the present stem of **eō**, changes to -e before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

² See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative *ibō* is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is *ire*. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

SINGULAR PLURAL

First Declension	-ae	-is	{ Rōmae, <i>in Rome.</i> Athēnis, <i>in Athens.</i>
Second Declension	-i	-is	{ Corinthi, <i>at or in Corinth.</i> Delphis, <i>at or in Delphi.</i>
Third Declension	-i(e)	-ibus	{ Carthāgini, <i>at or in Car-</i> <i>thage.</i> Trallibus, <i>at or in Tralles.</i>

2. *Domi, at home; humi, on the ground; rūri, in the country,* are also locative forms.
 3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition *in* and the ablative; *i.e.*, *in urbe est, he is in the city;* *in Italia sunt, they are in Italy.*

236. Examine the following:

1. Venit, <i>he comes</i>	{ ad pontem, <i>to the bridge.</i> in Italiam, <i>to or into Italy.</i>
	Rōmam, <i>to Rome.</i>
	domum, <i>home.</i>
	rūs, <i>to or into the country.</i>

2. **Exit, he goes** (ab) (dē) ex oppidō, from the town.
(ab) (dē) ex Ītaliā, from Italy.
Athēnīs, from Athens.
domō, from home.
rūre, from the country.

a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*, while a preposition (*in*, *ad*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*) is used with other words.

237. RULE.—Expressions of Place.

1. Place *Where*. Ablative with *in*.

But, Locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

2. Place *To which*. Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

3. Place *From which*. Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.

But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

238.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f.,	eō, ire, iī, itum, go.
<i>Athens.</i>	exeō (ex + eō), ire, exiī, ex-
Carthāgō, inis , f., <i>Carthage</i> .	itūrus, go forth, leave.
Corinthus, ī , f. (28, 2), <i>Cor-</i>	trānseō (trāns + eō), ire,
<i>inth.</i>	trānsii, trānsitūrus, go
Delphi, ὄrum (plur.), m., <i>Del-</i>	over, go across, cross.
<i>phi.</i>	impetus, ūs, m., attack.
equitātus (eques), ūs, m., cav-	impetum faciō in (with acc.),
<i>alry.</i>	make an attack upon.

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur.
 2. Legiōnēs populi Rōmāni in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus nāvium militibus, quī in hibernis erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium mīlitum.
 5. Propter cāsum nostrōrum hostēs laetī erant.

- II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are assembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen. 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exibātis; īmus; īimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā¹; Rōmā; domō. 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāgini; Athēnīs; domī. 5. Cōnsul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit. 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnīs bellum geret. 9. Helvētii ē finibus exire parant, et exercitum flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

- II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province. 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from the banks by the enemy.

¹ of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (510), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242.

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus, <i>one</i>	ūna	ūnum	trēs, <i>three</i>	tria
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, trīs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	duo, <i>two</i>	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	millia (mīlia)
GEN.	mille	millium (mīlium)
DAT.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)
ACC.	mille	millia (mīlia)
ABL.	mille	millibus (mīlibus)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls*; **septem puerorum**, *of seven boys*.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers*.

244. Examine the following:

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Italiā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quinque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quinque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. RULE.—Extent of Time and Space.—*Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. , <i>height, depth.</i>	mercātor, ḍris, m. , <i>merchant, trader.</i>
ēruptiō, ḍnis, f. , <i>a breaking out, a sally.</i>	socius, i, m. , <i>companion, ally.</i>
incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus , <i>set fire to, burn.</i>	passus, ūs, m. , <i>pace.</i>
maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus , <i>stay, remain.</i>	mille passūs, a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile; millia passuum, miles.
	hōra, ae, f. , <i>hour.</i>

247.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Centum viginti mercātōrum; mille trecentis sex et quadrāgintā militibus. 2. Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum. 3. Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est. 4. Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant. 5. Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat. 6. Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant. 7. Sociī

Helvētiōrum decem millia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria millia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfecti erant. 10. Id flūmen cēntum pedēs lātum et duodēviginti altum fuit. 11. Hic collis septuāgintā quinque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in -ē.

diēs, m., *day*

rēs, f., *thing*

Stem *diē-*

Stem *rē-*

Base *di-*

Base *r-*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
					SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	<i>diēi</i> ¹	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i> ¹	<i>rērum</i>	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-em	-ēs
ABL.	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ē	-ēbus

¹ In the genitive singular the case ending is -ēi if the base ends in a vowel, -ēi if the base ends in a consonant.

- i. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. RULE.—Gender. — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following:

1. **Satis cibi habēmus,** we have enough (of) food.
2. **Nihil novi est,** there is nothing (of) new (newness, novelty).
3. **Unus ex militibus vulnerātus est,** one of the soldiers was wounded.
4. **Quidam dē nostris cecidērunt,** some of our men fell.
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibi**, **novi**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quidam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. RULE.—Genitive of the Whole ("Partitive Genitive") — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, ēi, f., <i>line of battle.</i>	nihil reliqui, <i>nothing left.</i>
diēs, ēi, m., <i>day.</i>	cōficiō, ere, cōfēci, cōfectus, <i>accomplish, finish, wear out.</i>
rēs, rei, f., <i>thing, circumstance, affair.</i>	pūblicus, a, um, <i>public.</i>
nihil (indecl. noun), <i>nothing.</i>	rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f., <i>the state, the commonwealth.</i>
satis (indecl. noun), <i>enough.</i>	

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī mīllia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētiī cum omnibus impedīmentis domum īre coācti sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Hēlvētiīs, quī flūmen trānsibant, pugnābat. 4. Vīcōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Prīmā lūce paucī dē eōrum mīlitibus iter nōn cōnfēcerant. 6. Fīnitimē eīs satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō periculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātīs eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētiōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Prīmam aciem iaccere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō. ² Express this idea in some other way than by using habent.

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallic War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 476.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī ē finibus suis¹ exire cōnstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vīcōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum redditōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque⁵ domō efferre iubent.³ Rauraci et Tulingi et Latobrigi finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exire cōnstituunt.³ Bōii, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīci et sociī erant.

(READING SELECTION 454)

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are: *positive, comparative, superlative*.

I. The positive is the simple form of the adjective: *cārus, dear*.

¹ their. ² about (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From tollō. ⁵ Acc. of quisque.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cārior*, *cārius*, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*: *cārus* (base *cār-*), *dear*, *cārissimus*, *a, um, dearest*.

POSITIVE <i>M. and F.</i>	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE <i>N.</i>
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>lātus, a, um</i> (<i>lāt-</i>), <i>wide</i>	<i>lātior, lātius,</i> <i>wider</i>		<i>lātissimus, a, um,</i> <i>widest</i>
<i>fortis, e</i> (<i>fort-</i>). <i>brave</i>	<i>fortior, fortius,</i> <i>braver</i>		<i>fortissimus, a, um,</i> <i>bravest</i>
<i>vēlōx</i> (<i>vēlōc-</i>). <i>swift</i>	<i>vēlōcior, vēlōcius,</i> <i>swifter</i>		<i>vēlōcissimus, a, um,</i> <i>swiftest</i>

257. The superlative is declined like *bonus* (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
GEN.	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
ACC.	<i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs (is)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
ABL.	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>

- i. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare *altus* (*alt-*), *high, deep*; *potēns* (*potent-*), *powerful*; *brevis* (*brev-*), *short*. Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following :

1. **Hic mōns altior quam ille est,** } *this mountain is higher*
 2. **Hic mōns altior illō est,** } *than that.*
 3. **Montem altiōrem quam illum videō,** } *I see a mountain*
 4. **Montem altiōrem illō videō,** } *higher than that.*

Observe that in 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative, while in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. So in 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative, while in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, *vir quō nēmō fortior erat, a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE.—**Ablative of Comparison.**—*After comparatives with **quam** the same case is used after **quam** as before it. After comparatives without **quam** the ablative is used.*

261.

VOCABULARY

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift.	lātitūdō, inis, f., width,
tūtus, a, um, safe.	breadth.
turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.	perveniō, ire, pervēni, per-
	ventum, come up, arrive,
Rhodanus, i, m., the Rhone.	reach.
quam, adv., than.	obsideō, ēre, obsēdi, obsessus,
latus,¹ lateris, n., side, flank.	besiege.

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

1. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat.
 2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt. 3. Incolās qui ex oppidō exiērunt laudat. 4. Quī clāmōribus Gallōrum terrentur? 5. Tempus anni bellō nōn erat idōneum. 6. Ille mōns mille pedēs altus est.

¹ Do not confuse with the adjective **lātus, a, um.**

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiī fīnitīmis fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multis rēbus potentiōrēs illis gentibus erant. 4. Equōs vēlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vidimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vēlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vidī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissima erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus*, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), pulchrior, pulchr-	pulcherrimus,	a, beautiful [eager] ius um
ācer (acr-), keen, ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus,	a, um

265. The following six adjectives ending in *-lis* form their superlative by adding *-imus, a, um* to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i>	similior, ius	simillimus, a, um
dissimilis, e (dissi- nil-), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, ius	dissimilimus, a, um
facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i>	facilior, ius	facillimus, a, um
difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i>	difficilior, ius	difficillimus, a, um
gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i>	gracilior, ius	gracillimus, a, um
humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i>	humilior, ius	humillimus, a, um

266. Examine the following :

1. **Hic mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est,** *this mountain is a hundred feet higher* (literally, *higher by a hundred feet*) than that.
2. **Hoc iter multō facilius illō est,** *this road is much easier* (literally, *easier by much*) than that.

Observe that the ablatives *centum pedibus* and *multō* express the *measure of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — **Measure of Difference.** — *The Measure of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. **Hic mōns altissimus est, this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.**
2. **Hic mōns altior est, this mountain is rather (or too) high.**

269.

VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., approach,	animus, i, m., mind, courage,
<i>arrival.</i>	<i>spirit, disposition.</i>
lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.	inter, prep. with acc., be-
exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus,	tween, among, during.
<i>await, wait for, expect.</i>	certiōrem eum faciō, with dē
ibi, adv., in that place,	and abl., I inform him (lit.,
<i>there.</i>	<i>I make him more certain) of.</i>

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit. 2. Quod cōnsilium tūtius hōc est? 3. Nāvēs quibus militēs missī erant vēlōcissimae sunt. 4. Helvētiī finitimōs multōs annōs fīnibus prohibuerant. 5. Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.

- II. 1. There are not enough horsemen in Rome. 2. Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul. 3. Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days. 4. Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.

271.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Impetum hostium exspectāre difficillimum est. 2. Ripae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt. 3. Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est. 4. Pōns intér duo oppida factus erat. 5. Omnium urbī viārum haec multō brevissima est. 6. Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat. 8. Collis in quō Rōmānī castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quī ad vīcum est. 9. Dē cāsū exercitūs

lēgātōs certiōrēs fēcit. 10. Quī eōs certiōrēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly high mountain.
 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. Possum

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus, a, um, good</i>	<i>melior, melius</i>	<i>optimus, a, um</i>
<i>malus, a, um, bad</i>	<i>peior, peius</i>	<i>pessimus, a, um</i>
<i>magnus, a, um, great</i>	<i>maior, maius</i>	<i>maximus, a, um</i>
<i>parvus, a, um, small</i>	<i>minor, minus</i>	<i>minimus, a, um</i>
<i>multus, a, um, much</i>	<i>— plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus, a, um</i>
<i>multi, ae, a, many</i>	<i>plūrēs, plūra</i>	<i>plūrimi, ae, a</i>
<i>vetus, veteris, old</i>	<i>vetustior, vetustius</i>	<i>veterimus, a, um</i>
<i>senex, senis, old</i>	<i>senior (maior nātū)</i>	<i>maximus nātū</i>
(501)		
<i>iuvenis, e, young</i>	<i>iūnior (minor nātū)</i>	<i>minimus nātū</i>
<i>superus, a, um, above</i>	<i>superior, superius, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus, summus, highest</i>
<i>inferus, a, um, below</i>	<i>īnferior, īferius, lower</i>	<i>īnfimus, īmus, lowest.</i>

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. **Plūs, more,** is not declined like other comparatives
 (257). Wherein is the difference?

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is
ABL.	—	—	plūribus

274. **Possum** (**pot(is) + sum**), *I am able, I can.*

PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —**

Learn all tenses of the indicative (522).

Observe

- That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
- That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (521).

275.

VOCABULARY

fidēs, ei, f., trust, confidence.	accēdō, ere, accessi, accessū-
potestās, ātis, f. (possum),	rus (with ad and the acc.),
power, authority.	go or come near, approach.
nōbilis, e, well known, noble.	hūc, adv., to this place, hither.
amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample.	quam maximus, the greatest
permittō, ere, permisi, permis-	possible, as large as possible (with superlatives)
sus, give up, intrust, permit.	quam has the force "as possible").

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficilius iter facere coēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōnsiliis certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostris ad flūmen lātissimum pervaēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdi-mus lātior mille passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall.
 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days.
 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech.
 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accē-dere ad vīcum, qui summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn pos-sunt. 4. Omnia in fidem² et potestātem populi Rōmāni illae nātiōnēs permisērunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Hel-vētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs cīv-tatis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Hel-vētiī ob flūmina maxima trānsire in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annīs maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house.
 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant.
 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ on the highest part of, on the top of. Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as īmus, the lowest part of, the bottom of; medius, the middle of; extrēmus, the end of.

² keeping, protection.

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings:

turpis	pessimus	ācrior	minimus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplus	vēlōx	similis	plūrēs
nōbilis	vetustior	maior	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding **-ē** to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miser-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i>

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems ending in **-nt** drop **-t**.

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
fortis, <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdent-	prūdenter, <i>wisely</i>

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb:

primus, <i>first</i>	primō, <i>at first</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile, <i>easily</i>

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note one exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
ācer	āriter, <i>eagerly</i>	ārius	ācerimē
multus	multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: *turpis, amplus, nōbilis, pessimus, vēlōx, plūrēs.*

281.

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i>	agmen, agminis, n. (<i>agō</i>), <i>army</i> (on the march), <i>column</i> ; novissimum agmen, <i>the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i>
Instruō, ere, instrüxi, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i>	proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next</i> (163).
administrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i>	apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with, near.</i>
plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i>	quārtus, a, um, <i>fourth.</i>

282.

EXERCISES

1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorix plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātōre optimē administrābantur. 3. Helvētiī multō ācrius quam fīnitimē cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum exspectāvit. 5. Vicus ad quem prīmum agmen pervēnerat

proximus erat finibus Gallorum. 6. Omnia quae legatus iusserat milites bene egérunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervenit, acerrimē cum hostibus equites pugnabant. 8. Summus collis a peditibus nostris occupatus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorix filiam et unum e filiis nostri cēpērunt, et multos interfecērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnare oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī socii apud finitimos ob amicitiam populi Rōmāni plūrimū possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there² on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long³ marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.⁴ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ when.

² eō (adv.).

³ magnus.

⁴ See 147, 3.



Agmen

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

THE Two ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETII COULD
LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duōbus itineribus Helvētiī domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Unum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodānum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētiī comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (511): *ego, I; tū, you; sui, of himself, herself, itself.*

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

i. The pronoun of the first person is *ego, I*; of the second person *tū, you*; of the third person *is, ea, id, he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.

a. **Tē vocō, I'm calling you.** ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore *ego* is not used.)

b. **Ego tē vocō, I(emphatic) am calling you.** (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. ² I.e. the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you.")

- c. Ego eum laudō; is mē culpat, *I praise him; he blames me.*

It will be recalled that in the exercises of the preceding lessons the subjects of the verbs, when pronouns, were not expressed. Why is it impossible to omit the personal pronouns as subjects in English as often as in Latin?

286. USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- I. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.
 - S. 1. I praise *myself* PL. We praise *ourselves*
 2. You praise *yourself* You praise *yourselves*
 3. { He praises *himself* } They praise *themselves*
 3. { She praises *herself* }
 - 2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, *ego* and *tū* (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, *sui*, *of himself, herself, itself*.
 - S. 1. *mē laudō, I praise myself* PL. *nōs laudāmus, we praise ourselves*
 2. *tē laudās, you praise yourself* *vōs laudātis, you praise yourselves*
 3. *sē laudat, he praises himself* *sē laudant, they praise themselves*
 - 3. Review 190. Do not confuse *is* with *sui*. *Sui* regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands.

- a. *Vir sē videt, the man sees himself.*
- b. *Vir eum videt, the man sees him (some one else).*
- 4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse *ipse* with *sē*. *Ipse* is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.
 - a. *Vir ipse eum vidit, the man himself saw him, or the man saw him himself.*
 - b. *Vir sē vidit, the man saw himself.*
 - c. *Virum ipsum vidimus, we saw the man himself.*

287. The preposition *cum* with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them; *tēcum*, instead of *cum tē*; *nōbiscum*, instead of *cum nōbis*. So also *qui-buscum*, *with whom*, instead of *cum quibus*.

288. Examine the following :

1. *Ego, qui haec faciō, tuus pater sum, I, who do this, am your father.*
2. *Vōs, qui haec facitis, mei amici estis, you, who do this, are my friends.*

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

<i>dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus,</i>	<i>commeātus, ūs, m., provisions,</i> <i>give up, surrender.</i>
<i>committō, ere, commisi, com-</i>	<i>spēs, ei, f., hope.</i>
<i>missus, intrust, commit;</i>	<i>sine, prep. with abl., without.</i>
<i>proelium committō, begin</i>	<i>ante, adv., and prep. with</i>
<i>battle.</i>	<i>acc., before.</i>
<i>recipiō, ere, recēpli, receptus,</i>	<i>posteā, adv., afterwards.</i>
<i>take back, receive; sē reci-</i>	<i>autem, conj. (never the first</i>
<i>pere, retreat, betake one'sself.</i>	<i>word), but, however.</i>

SINGULAR

1. *mē recipiō, I retreat*
2. *tē recipis, you retreat*
3. *sē recipit, he retreats*

PLURAL

- nōs recipimus, we retreat*
- vōs recipitis, you retreat*
- sē recipiunt, they retreat*

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Omnis reī pūblicae spēs in militum virtūte posita¹ est.* 2. *Brevi tempore quattuor ē prīncipibus Rōmam mittentur.* 3. *Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō.* 4. *Haec rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostris summō in colle vidēbātur.*

- II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Sine vōbīs miserrimī erimus.* 2. *Ego sum mīles, tū es nauta.* 3. *Nōbīs est satis cibī.* 4. *Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt.* 5. *Magnā cum celeritātē in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus.* 6. *Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō.* 7. *Ubi Gallī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt.* 8. *Caesar legiōnēs ad² sē convocāri iubet.* 9. *Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt.* 10. *Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis.* 11. *Quis tēcum Athēnās ibit?*

- II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

(READING SELECTION 456)

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	meus, ¹ a, um, my, noster, nostra, nostrum, mine	our, ours
2D PER.	tuus, a, um, your, vester, vestra, vestrum, yours	your, yours
3D PER.	suus, a, um, his (own), suus, a, um, their (own), her(own), its(own)	their

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they belong, and not with the noun to which they refer. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.
 - a. *Suum patrem puella vidit, the girl saw her father.*
 - b. *Vestrum amicum vidimus, we saw your (plur.) friend.*
 - c. *Tuās filiās vidit, he saw your (sing.) daughters.*
2. **Suus, a, um**, is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of *is, eius, his, her, its; eorum, their; eārum, their* (referring to feminine).
 - a. *Agricola suum equum laudat, the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
 - b. *Agricola eius equum laudat, the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
 - c. *Agricola eōrum equōs laudat, the farmer praises their horses.*
 - d. *Agricolae suōs equōs laudant, the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is *mi.*

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsui nostris fuit**, it was a great help to our men (literally, it was for a great help to our men).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostris subsidiō misit**, he sent the third line as a relief (literally, for a relief) to our men.

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsui** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service or purpose*.

295. RULE.—**Dative of Service or Purpose.**—The dative is used with **sum** and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.

296.

SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	ego	mei ¹	meus, a, um, my, mine noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, a, um, your, yours (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, a, um, his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id.

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?

297.

VOCABULARY

redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus,	<i>opus, operis, n., work, labor.</i>
<i>go back, return.</i>	tamen, adv., yet, however,
dimitto, ere, dimisi, dimissus,	<i>nevertheless.</i>
<i>send off, dismiss, let go.</i>	itaque, conj., and so, there-
reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus,	<i>fore.</i>
<i>give back, return, render.</i>	inde, adv., thence, thereupon.
sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus-	ūsus, ūs, m., use, advantage,
tentus, hold up, withstand,	<i>benefit.</i>
<i>sustain.</i>	

298.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Posteā in silvās sēsē recēpērunt. 3. Nōs dē proeliō certiōrēs faciet. 4. Caesar eōs sibi arma dēdere cōgit. 5. Militēs sē laudābant, eōs autem culpābant. 6. Nōbīs Rōmae satis cibī est.
- II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Caesar equitātum auxiliō suis mīsit. 2. Tuī amīci tibi, meī mihi sunt cārissimī. 3. Labiēnus ūnum latus castrōrum rīpis flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Haec rēs nostrīs magnō ūsui erat. 5. Impetum sustinēre nōn poterant; itaque in suōs finēs rediērunt. 6. Hostēs Caesari sē sua-que omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitūdinem flūmen trānsire Helvētiī nōn potuērunt. 8. Caesar eius militēs dīmīsit, suōs autem in castris tenuit. 9. Cōsul in finēs Helvētiōrum quam maximis itineribus contendere cōn-stituit. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs adventum suum exspectāre iussit

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to return all his possessions¹ to him. 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 515):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	qua	quid (<i>quod</i>), <i>somebody, anybody</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (<i>aliquod</i>), <i>some one</i>
quisquam		quicquam, <i>any one</i> (at all) (no plur.)
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, <i>quiddam</i> , <i>a certain one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque, <i>quodque</i> , <i>each one, every one</i>

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **Quis**, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**: **si quid his accidit**, *if anything happens to them*.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all*, *every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this*.
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other*, *some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dixit**, *some one (I do not know who) told you this*.
5. **Quidam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quidam haec mihi dixit**, *some one (I know who, but I will not tell) told me this*.

302. Examine the following:

1. **Vir summae virtutis fuit**, } *he was a man of very great*
2. **Vir summā virtute fuit**, } *courage*.

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtutis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtute** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtutis** and **virtute**.

303. RULE.—Descriptive Genitive and Ablative. — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, if itself modified by an adjective or genitive, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.*

304.

VOCABULARY

diligentia, ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence, industry.</i>	aliēnus, a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i>
grātia, ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i>	reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus, <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i>
plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>the common people.</i>	si, conj., <i>if.</i> nisi, conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i>

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesari dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxiliūm, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitatui magnō ūsu fuit. 3. Legiōni satis cibi nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Galli sē suaque omnia Rōmānis dēdidērunt, quod magnitūdine eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. When he returned to Rome, he saw his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exire iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiam laudat, laetus est. 3. Quidam ex Gallis multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novi² repperit? 6. Liberi quīque³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocāti erant. 7. Princeps propter diligentiam magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī alienō in locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Finitimī nostri bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good² about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ad. ²See 250, 2. ³quīque (qui + que) = et iī qui. ⁴bonō animō, well disposed.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns ¹	wanting
FUTURE	participial stem + ūrus	Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (504); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb of the clause in which it stands*. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ iō verbs have a connecting vowel **e** before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns**, **audiendus**.

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as (while) he is doing it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent to (not yet done at)* the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give*; **videō**, *see*; **faciō**, *make, do*; **mūniō**, *fortify*; **eō**, *go*. (525.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses :

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common ; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them as (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōnsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul, etc.*).
4. **Galli his rēbus permōti obsidēs misērunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages (literally, the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.).

5. **Orgetorix damnatus interficietur**, if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed (literally, Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed).
6. **Vulneratus diū pugnabat**, although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time (literally, having been wounded, he fought).
7. **Multos vicōs captōs incendit**, he captured and burned many villages (literally, he burned many captured villages).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., approach.	circumveniō, ire, circum-
vallum, i, n., rampart, earth-	vēni, circumventus, come
works.	around, surround.
posterus, a, um, next, follow-	ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxi, ēductus,
ing.	lead out.
circum, prep. with acc.,	lacessō, ere, lacessivi, lacessi-
around.	tus, attack, harass.
permovereō, ēre, permōvi, per-	Sēquani, ḫrum, m. plur., the
mōtus, influence, arouse.	Sequani (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Hic grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.
 2. Galli cōnsilium cēpērunt quod Rōmānis nōn grātum erat. 3. Si quid reperitur, Caesari semper nūntiātur.
 4. Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat.
 5. Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dicuntur.
- II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival. 2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors has come. 3. He ordered the hostages to come to him. 4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

314.

EXERCISES

I. 1. His rēbus permōtī Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lē-gātōs cōpiās ē castris ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidī mūnientēs hostēs laces-sent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vällō et moenibus mūnītam obsidēre cōnstituērunt. 5. Caesar duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacessitus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castris ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Prīncipēs Gallōrum victi Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcerant certior factus est. 10. Lē-gātūs Gallōs qui castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed¹ of this, he hurried to Rome. 2. The general captured² their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing³ the river. 4. If you are defeated,⁴ you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Al-though we have been surrounded,⁵ we will fight bravely.

¹ 311, 3.² 311, 7.³ 311, 2.⁴ 311, 5.⁵ 311, 6.

(READING SELECTION 457)



A Siege

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. Ablative Absolute.—A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples:

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Caesar, Germānis
victis, in hi-
berna vēnit, | <i>after the Germans had
been conquered,
when he had conquered
the Germans,
after conquering the
Germans,
having conquered the
Germans,
now that the Germans
had been conquered,
the Germans having
been conquered,</i> | <i>Caesar went
into winter
quarters.</i> |
| 2. Oppidō expugnātō,
hostēs vincent, | <i>if the town is captured,
by capturing the town,
since the town has been
captured,
the town having been
captured,</i> | <i>they will con-
quer the
enemy.</i> |
| 3. Nōbis castra mū-
nientibus, Galli
pervēnērunt, | <i>while we were fortify-
ing the camp,
as we were fortifying
the camp,</i> | <i>the Gauls ar-
rived.</i> |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis, oppidō expugnātō, nōbis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Galli victi domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victi** agree with **Galli**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

Duce Caesare { lit. *Caesar (being) leader,*
Rōmāni { *under the leadership of Caesar,*
semper { *if Caesar was their leader,*
vincēbant, { *when Caesar was their leader,* } *the Romans*
always used
to conquer.

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit.**

318.

VOCABULARY

- m̄ulier, mulieris, f., woman.** **obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus,**
signum, i, n., sign, ensign, **possess, obtain, retain.**
 standard (of the legion). **convertō, ere, converti, con-**
quam primum, as soon as **versus, turn about, change.**
 possible. **signa convertō, face about (lit-**
tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, **erally, turn the standards**
 lift up, raise, remove, take **about).**
 away. **occidō, ere, occidi, occisus, cut**
redūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus, **down, kill, slay.**
 lead back. **inquam, inquit, def., say.**

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostrīs diū lacesſitīs mīsit.
 2. Caesar hostium clāmōribus permōtus mūnīre aditūs castrōrum coepit. 3. Cōnsul lēgātūm sēcum redīre Rōmām iubēbit. 4. Equitātus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacesſēbat. 5. Lēgātus nihil novī repperit.

- II. 1. After the Helvetii had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Tē imperātōre, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hiberna redūxit. 3. His Caesari nūntiātīs, quam primum Rōmā exiti. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suis¹ ā Gallis permōtīs¹ Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostium exspectāre est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, signis conversis, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesari Rōmam redire coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multis occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omni spē victōriae sublātā, Helvētiil cum mulieribus liberisque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Galli mūnierant ā Rōmānis incēnsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,¹ Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When their leader had been killed, the Gauls surrendered to Caesar. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. If our villages are burned, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE HELVETII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. His rēbus nūntiātis Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exire atque quam maximis itineribus ad Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriore legiō ūna.² Quā³ rē prōvinciam tōtam praebebēre quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

¹ = this battle having been made. ² but (only) one. ³ Quā rē, therefore.

eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Quī¹ lēgātī iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antiquīs Helvētiī cōnsulem Cassium occiderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inimīcō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final e of present infinitive to i , except in third conjugation, which changes final ere to i .
FUTURE	Future active participle and esse .	Supine in -um (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and iri .
PERFECT	Perfect stem + isse .	Perfect passive participle and esse .

¹ The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a personal pronoun or a demonstrative with or without *and*; hence **Qui lēgātī = these ambassadors.**

² See 303.

- I. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

<i>vinciō, bind.</i>	<i>iaciō, throw.</i>
<i>iubeō, order.</i>	<i>appellō, name, call.</i>
<i>relinquō, leave.</i>	<i>vincō, conquer.</i>
<i>sum, I am</i> (521).	<i>eō, go</i> (525).

324.

VOCABULARY

<i>auctōritās, ātis, f., reputation, influence, authority.</i>	<i>cottidiānus, a, um, daily.</i>
<i>littera, ae, f., letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document.</i>	<i>scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus, write.</i>
<i>rēs frūmentāria, rel frūmentariae, supplies of grain, provisions.</i>	<i>cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, fall, perish, die.</i>
	<i>at, conj., but.</i>
	<i>numquam, adv., never.</i>

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Galli cōsulem cōpiās īstrumentem lacessīvērunt.
 2. Rōmānī, signīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helyētiī coniūrātiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī finitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostrī autem multās mulierēs captās domum mīsērunt.
- II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy?
 2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After a few had been slain, the army was led back to camp. 4. And so hope was taken away from the Gauls.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Īnstruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibēri. 3. Capi; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; misisse; redūci. 5. Paucae dē filiābus occisae esse dicuntur. 6. Numquam culpāri cupimus. 7. Galli ā finitimis cottidiānis proeliis lacesſitī ex suis finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās litterās scripsisse dicēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portāri nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostrīs cecidisse in hōc proeliō dicuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

(READING SELECTION 458)

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venis, you are coming.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*dicit tē venire, he says that
you are coming, or he says
you are coming.*

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE.—Indirect Discourse. — *Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.*

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by (before) that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed:

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	<i>veniō, I am coming</i>	PRESENT <i>videt mē venire, he sees that I am coming</i> PAST <i>vidit mē venire, he saw that I was coming</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>veniēbam, I was coming</i>	PRESENT <i>audit mē vēnisse, he hears that I came, or have come</i> PAST
PERFECT	<i>vēni, I have come, I came</i>	<i>audivit mē vēnisse, he heard that I came, or had come</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>vēneram, I had come</i>	
FUTURE	<i>veniam, I shall come</i>	PRESENT <i>spērat mē ventūrum (esse), he hopes that I shall come</i> PAST <i>spēravit mē ventūrum (esse), he hoped that I should come</i>

CAUTION.—The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

331.

VOCABULARY

<i>existimō, āre, āvi, ātus, think,</i>	<i>trādō, ēre, trādidi, trāditus,</i>
<i>believe, suppose.</i>	<i>give up, surrender, deliver.</i>
<i>dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus,</i>	<i>cōnspectus, ūs, m., sight,</i>
<i>point out, show, mention.</i>	<i>view.</i>
<i>spērō, āre, āvi, ātus, hope.</i>	<i>complūrēs, a (ia), a great</i>
<i>respondeō, ēre, respondi, re-</i>	<i>many, very many.</i>
<i>spōnsum, answer, reply.</i>	
<i>sciō, scire, scivi, scitus, know,</i>	
<i>know how</i>	

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dīxit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōnspectū suī¹ imperātōris pugnāvisse miles exīstimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditis, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūntiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditis, in suam potestātem vēnisce. 8. Omnēs scimus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suis “Quis scit” inquit “hunc pontem facere?” 10. Imperātōri nūntiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgāti respondērunt “Nōs ā finitimis nostris diū lacessimur.”

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. I hope many have not fallen. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, “I hope that they will retreat.”

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of “saying,” “thinking,” etc.

² Do not use *maximus*. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH *titor*, *fruor*, ETC.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows:

	PRESENT IND.	PRESENT INF.	PERFECT IND.
1ST CONJ. hortor	hortāri	hortātus sum,	<i>I urge, encourage</i>
2D CONJ. vereor	verēri	veritus sum,	<i>I fear</i>
3D CONJ. sequor	sequi	secūtus sum,	<i>I follow</i>
4TH CONJ. potior	potiri	potitus sum,	<i>I get possession of</i>

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (528.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortatus milites proelium commisit, after encouraging (literally, *having encouraged*) his soldiers, he began the battle.

336. Examine the following :

1. *Equis utuntur*, they use horses.
2. *Vita fruiatur*, he enjoys life.

Observe that *equis* and *vita* are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — *Ablative with Certain Verbs.* — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs fūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

fūtor, fūti, fūsus sum, use,	proficiscor, proficisci, profec-
employ.	tus sum, set out, march, go.
sequor, sequi, secūtus sum,	arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think,
follow.	suppose.
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, en-	pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, ex-
courage, exhort.	pel, drive away, rout.
potior, potiri, potitus sum,	praesidium, ī, n., defense,
get possession of.	guard, garrison.
fossa, ae, f., ditch, trench.	

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Italiam itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coācti sunt. 3. Lēgāti dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

- II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtimini; proficiscētur; proficiscitur.
 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dixit.
 4. Cōnsul Rōmā profectus in finēs Helvētiōrum contendit.
 5. Germāni ūsi esse parvis equis dicuntur. 6. Cōnsul,

exercitū pulsō, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnirī arbitrābantur. 9. Hostēs potiri castrīs nōn posse dux vīdit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs prae-sidiō castrīs Labiēnus relīquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set¹ out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of ferō (527) and fiō (526).

1. Review the conjugation of faciō (177-179), and note that fiō is used as the passive of faciō.

342. Examine the following :

1. Nōbis persuādent, *they persuade us.*
2. Imperātōri pāret, *he obeys the commander.*

Observe that nōbis and imperātōri are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE.—Dative with Verbs.—*Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹Use a participle.

344.

VOCABULARY

<i>ferō, ferre, tull, lātus, bear,</i>	<i>flō, fieri, factus sum, become,</i>
<i>carry.</i>	<i>be made.</i>
<i>cōferō, cōferre, contull,</i>	<i>persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, per-</i>
<i>conlātus, bring together,</i>	<i>suāsum (w. dat.), persuade.</i>
<i>gather.</i>	<i>pāreō, ēre, pārui, — (w. dat.),</i>
<i>nēmō, dat. nēmini (no gen.</i>	<i>obey.</i>
<i>or abl.), no one, nobody.</i>	<i>noceō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus</i>
<i>moror, āri, ātus sum, delay,</i>	<i>(w. dat.), harm, injure.</i>
<i>hinder. [resist, oppose.</i>	<i>crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum</i>
<i>resistō, ere, restiti,—(w. dat.),</i>	<i>(w. dat.), believe, trust.</i>

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostri equitātum Gallōrum tria mīllia passuum se-cūtī pepulērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vīcō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnitā potītur. 4. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortatī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castrīs ēductōs īstruī iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentīs in ūnum locum conlātīs, nostri aciem īstrūxērunt. 2. Pārēre suō quisque imperātōri dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Id² persuādēre eīs numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō eī haec dīcentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

¹ Use the ablative absolute. ² Id is the direct object of *persuādēre*. Translate: *of this*.

incolae nostrī fortiter resistēbant. 7. Bonī librī nēminī nocent. 8. Caesar litterīs Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās (*Belgians*) contrā populum Rōmānum coniūratiōnem facere. 9. Quārē (*therefore*) Caesar ad eōs proficisci cōstituit. 10. Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparatā, castra movet, diēbusque quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

- II. 1. They inform Caesar; Caesar is informed by them.
 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

(READING SELECTION 459)

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant mūrum pedēs sēdecim altum et fossam ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō et castellis mūnitīs, facile eōs prohibēre potest. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum rediērunt, negat² sē posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare. Helvētiī autem, nāvi bus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, perrumpere cōnāti³ operis mūnitioñe⁴ et militum tēlīs repulsi sunt.

¹ See 272, *senex*. ² *negat sē posse*, says he cannot (literally, denies that he can). ³ From cōnor, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb mūniō?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES
OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **fiō** (526).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
PASSIVE	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
- a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.
- b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. RULE.—Subjunctive of Purpose.—*Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with **nē** if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of :

cōficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficiō	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	redūcō	sciō	tollō	scribō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	lacessō	pellō	instruō	fiō

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in unum locum convocatis, Galli impetum nostrorum exspectare cōstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eorum finēs pervenērunt, Galli eis restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum quemque cibum portare iubet. 4. Orgetorīgis filia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fīēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis utī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad prīmū agmen proficisci ut suos cohortētur. 2. Nostri, signis conversis, pellere Gallos coepērunt. 3. Lēgātū in Galliam proficiisci iubet nē ex his natiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redīmus domum nē ab hostibus occidāmur. 6. Galli magnas cōpias unum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litteras paucas scribas? 8. Lēgāti in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuadeant. 9. Nōs sequimī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallos accēdere ut obsidēs redant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings -m (active), -r (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem amārer

mūnīrem mūnīrer

monērem monērer

- I. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted (so) that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so*, *such*, *in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

- I. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint, the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.**

2. Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Galli trānsire nōn possent,
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
 3. Nostri tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē recipent,
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
 4. Tam graviter vulnerāti erant ut pugnāre nōn possent, they
had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with *ut* express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
- b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.
- c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b, c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE.—Subjunctive of Result. — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative.*

359.

VOCABULARY

cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecū-	dēditiō, ḫnis, f., <i>surrender</i> .
tus sum, <i>pursue, overtake.</i>	calamitās, ātis, f., <i>disaster,</i>
prōgredior, prōgredi, prō-	<i>defeat.</i>
gressus sum, <i>advance, pro-</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great, such.</i>
<i>ceed.</i>	tam, adv., <i>so (with adjectives</i>
audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, dare.	<i>and adverbs).</i>
accipiō, ere, accēpi, acceptus,	ita, adv., <i>thus, so.</i>
<i>receive.</i>	timor, ḫris, m., <i>fear.</i>
castellum, i, n., <i>fort, redoubt.</i>	

¹ A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trānseunt ut eōrum fīnēs vāstent. 2. Vīcīs multīs et parvīs incēnsīs, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castrīs potīrī posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesārī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castrīs profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trānseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientīs cōsquerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnitur ut expugnārī nōn possit. 3. Omnēs qui trānsire Rhodanum ausī sunt tēlis et sagittis vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitūdine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellīs mūnīta est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellīs ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum fīnēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenīre possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

(READING SELECTION 460)

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (524). Observe that **nōlō** is a compound of **nōn** and **volō**, and **mālō** a compound of **magis**, **more** (shortened to **ma**), and **volō**. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following :

1. Princeps lēgātōs misit ut pācem peterent, *the chief sent*
2. Princeps lēgātōs misit qui pācem peterent, *ambassadors to ask for peace.*

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, **qui** is used instead of **ut** to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. RULE. — Relative Clause of Purpose. — Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion.

365.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|---|
| petō, ere, petīvi (ii), petitus, <i>aim at, ask for, go to get.</i> | praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemissus, <i>send ahead, dispatch.</i> |
| volō, velle, volui, —, <i>be willing, wish, will.</i> | celeriter, adv. (<i>celer, swift</i>), <i>swiftly, quickly.</i> |
| nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, <i>be unwilling, will not.</i> | senātus, ūs, m., <i>senate.</i> |
| mālō, mālle, mālui, —, <i>be more willing, prefer.</i> | dē tertiā vigiliā, <i>about the third watch</i> (a watch was equal to one fourth of the night). |
| impediō, ire, impedivī, impeditus, <i>entangle, impede.</i> | |

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam āriter pugnābant ut Helvētiī alii aliam in partem fugērent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditiōne certior factus legiōnēs in hīberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallīs crēdere arbitrābātur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain.
 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers.
 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nōlumus. 2. Māvis; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor mīlitēs praemīsit quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multi esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redīre mālēbant. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impedītōs lacesserent praemiserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs misērunt quī dixērunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesār hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemīsit.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the sēnate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, dixērunt, differs from that of the subjunctive, dīcerent.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (516–520); of **sum** (521); of **eo** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **possum** (522); of **fiō** (526); of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (524).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **-erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION	INDIRECT STATEMENT
Sciō quis veniat, <i>I know who is coming.</i>	Sciō eum venire, <i>I know (that) he is coming.</i>

370. RULE. — **Indirect Question.** — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare :

*He comes that I may see him.
He came that I might see him.*

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows :

Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> { <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Present Indicative, <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Perfect Indicative, some- times, when it means <i>have</i>, <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Future Indicative, <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Future Perfect Indicative, <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Present Subjunctive, <li style="margin-right: 10px;">Perfect Subjunctive. </div>
---	--

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	Imperfect Indicative,
	Perfect Indicative,
	Pluperfect Indicative,
	Imperfect Subjunctive,
	Pluperfect Subjunctive.

373. Examine the following :

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. { <i>Videt, he sees,</i>
<i>Vidēbit, he will see,</i>
<i>Viderit, he will have seen,</i> | } <i>quid faciam, what I am
doing.</i> |
| 2. { <i>Videt, he sees,</i>
<i>Vidēbit, he will see,</i>
<i>Viderit, he will have seen,</i> | } <i>quid fēcerim, what I have
done (or did).</i> |
| 3. { <i>Vidēbat, he was seeing,</i>
<i>Vidit, he saw,</i>
<i>Viderat, he had seen,</i> | } <i>quid facerem, what I was
doing.</i> |
| 4. { <i>Vidēbat, he was seeing,</i>
<i>Vidit, he saw,</i>
<i>Viderat, he had seen,</i> | } <i>quid fēcissem, what I had
done (or did).</i> |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE.— Sequence of Tenses.— Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

- Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have*, *has*, . . . , is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

<i>prōcēdō, ere, prōcessi, prōcess-</i>	<i>explorātor, ūris, m., scout.</i>
<i>sum, go forward, advance.</i>	<i>in reliquum tempus, for the</i>
<i>cōnor, āri, ātus sum, try,</i>	<i>future.</i>
<i>attempt.</i>	<i>inter sē dare, to exchange,</i>
<i>conloquor, conloqui, conlocū-</i>	<i>give each other.</i>
<i>tus sum, speak together,</i>	<i>in flūmine pontem faciō,</i>
<i>confer.</i>	<i>build a bridge across the</i>
<i>in animō habeō, } I have in</i>	<i>river.</i>
<i>mihi est in } mind, in-</i>	<i>rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, ask, beg,</i>
<i>animō.</i> } tend.	<i>teneō, ēre, tenui, —, hold.</i>

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātōre ē proeliō discēdere audēbit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex castrīs ēductās īstruī iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī. 5. Ubi¹ ire mēcum māvīs?

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar hastens to the river.

377.

EXERCISES

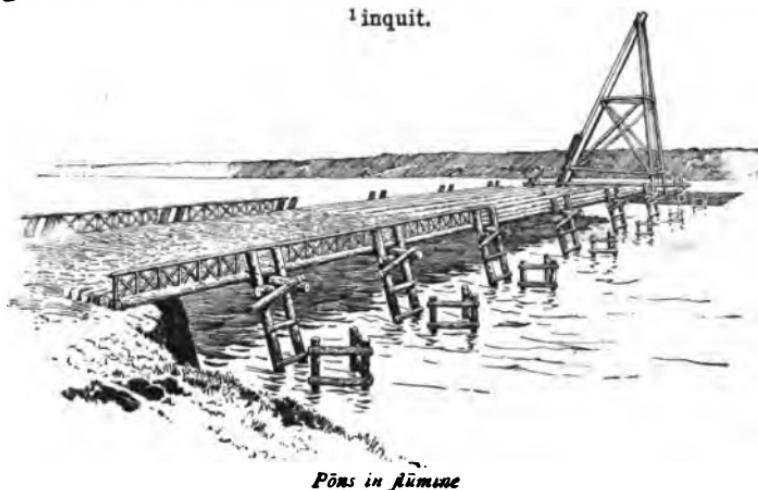
- I. 1. Helvētiīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Prīncipēs ut dē dēdictiōne conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor multōs diēs sciverat quae Gallī facere cōnāti essent. 5. Caesar praemittet eōs qui in flūmine pontem faciant. 6. Lēgāti Gallōrum Caesarī dixērunt quae sibi in animō in reliquum tempus facere esset. 7. Germāni Caesarem rogāvērunt

¹ When.

"Cūr in nostrōs fīnēs prōcessistī?" 8. Germāni Caesarem rogāvērunt cūr in suōs fīnēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis multīs castellīs mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent. 10. In animō habēmus obsidēs inter nōs dare.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,¹ "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

¹ inquit.



Pōns in flūmine

LESSON 63

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

378. A substantive clause is one that is used as a noun. Its use as subject or object of a verb is most common. In the following English examples the substantive clauses are italicized:

I know <i>what he has done.</i>	(As object.)
I know (<i>that</i>) <i>he has come.</i>	(As object.)
It happened <i>that he was present.</i>	{ (As subject, or in apposition with subject.)
He persuaded us <i>to leave the city.</i>	(As object.)
We feared <i>that he might die.</i>	(As object.)
I do not doubt <i>that he will go.</i>	(As object.)
He ordered us <i>to leave the city.</i>	(As object.)

It will be observed from these examples that substantive clauses are expressed in English in several ways. In Latin substantive clauses are usually expressed either by the infinitive or by the subjunctive. This use of the infinitive in indirect discourse and as complementary infinitive, and of the subjunctive in indirect questions, we have already considered.

379. Subjunctive clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* are very often used in Latin as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree.* As an infinitive phrase is used in English as the object of such verbs, while *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive is used in Latin, this difference in usage must be carefully noted.

EXAMPLES

1. *Helvētiis persuāsit ut exirent, he persuaded the Helvetii to leave.*
2. *Suis imperat nē id faciant, he orders his men not to do this.*
3. *Militēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant, he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.*
4. *Tē rogō ut mihi crēdās, I ask you to believe me.*

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, persuade.
imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, order, command.
mandō, āre, āvi, ātus, order, command.
rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, ask, beg.
postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, demand, ask.
moneō, ēre, monui, monitus, advise, warn.
petō, ere, petivī (ii), petitus, ask, request.
quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, inquire, ask.
cohortor (and hortor), ārl, ātus sum, encourage, urge.
permittō, ere, permisi, permissum, permit, allow.
concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum, permit, allow.

- The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, command.
vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, forbid.

- The following are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer, allow.
cōnstituō, ere, cōnstitui, cōnstitūtus, determine.
cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupitus, desire.
volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, volui, wish.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. *Sciō quid tibi sit in animō.* 2. *Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūti domum rediērunt.* 3. *Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent.* 4. *Helvētī respondērunt sēsē exīre ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs.* 5. *Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?*

- II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.
 2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
 3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
 4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suīs imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiīs superātīs, bellum gerere cum Germānīs cōnstituit. 4. Dumnorīx Sēquanīs persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētiī finitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātūs iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem in reliquum tempus face-rent. 8. Galli nōn permittunt ut quisquam vīnō ūtātur. 9. Ubi Caesar in Gallōrum fīnēs pērvēnit, suōs vāstāre agrōs vetuit. 10. Nostrī magnum Gallōrum fugientium numerum occīdērunt.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him² what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

(READING SELECTION 461)

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanī invītis propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ his ipsī Helvētiī persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

¹ imperō. ² Use the accusative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrīmōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquaniis impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patientur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum** TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. **Timēō nē hoc faciat**, *I fear that he will do this (or I fear that he is doing this).*
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret**, *I feared that he would not do this.*

Observe

- a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.
- b. That we translate the **nē** clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the **ut** clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

385. RULE.—Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.—*The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following :

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *when Caesar came into Gaul.*
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *when Caesar was in Gaul.*
3. **Cum Caesari id nūntiātūm esset**, *when this had been reported to Caesar.*

¹ **eō dēprecātōre**, by his mediation (literally, *he (being) an intercessor; ablative absolute*). ² Do not confuse this verb with **imperō**.

4. Cum his persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt, since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.
5. Cum primi ḫrdinēs concidissent, reliqui tamen resistēbant, although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time; but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = *quō temporē*). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum causal**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum concessive**, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. RULE.—*Cum* clauses. — 1. In a **cum** clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.

2. In a **cum** clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.

388.

VOCABULARY

vereor, ēri, veritus sum,	fear, respect.	signa inferō, charge (literally, bear the standards against).
timeō, ēre, timui, —,	fear, be afraid of.	in fidem venire, to put one's self under the protection.
intellegō, ere, intellēxi, intellexus sum,	know, perceive.	postquam, conj., after.
		policeor, ēri, pollicitus sum, promise.

389.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiis nē iter per prōvinciam faciant mandat. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quaesivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētiī finitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsis, sēcum exīrent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostri īpetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcerimus, tamen ā nostris amīcis nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nos-trōs in flūmine impeditōs laccesserent. 4. Cum nostri fortiter resisterent, Galli sē recipere cōnstituērunt. 5. Helvētiī superātī in Caesaris fidem venire volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellegeret, in primam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hōc factō, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Galli pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populi Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs signa con-versa īferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use iubeō. ² Although . . . resisted. Express in two ways. See 311, 6, 315, 386, 5.

4. I fear that he is coming.
5. I know that he is coming.
6. I know who is coming.
7. The man that I saw in Rome has arrived.
8. Since the enemy have fled, we will return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review **possum** (274). The verb **sum** is often compounded with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prōd**), **super**. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound **prōsum**, *I benefit*, **prōd**, not **prō**, is found before **e**. Learn the conjugation of **prōsum** (523).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of **sum**:

absum, *abesse, āful, —, be away, be absent.*

adsum, *adesse, adful, —, be present, aid.*

dēsum, *deesse, dēful, —, be lacking, fail.*

obsum, *obesse, obful, —, be against, injure.*

praesum, *praeesse, praefui, —, be at the head of, command.*

prōsum, *prōdesse, prōful, —, be of use to, benefit.*

393. Examine the following:

1. **Lēgātus oppidō praefuit**, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town.*
2. **Amicis prōsumus**, *we benefit our friends.*
3. **Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat** (**ad + propinquō**), *the army was approaching the enemy.*
4. **Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit**, *he puts honor before money, or he prefers honor to money.*

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE.—Dative with Compound Verbs. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.**VOCABULARY**

appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum *vis* (no gen. or dat. sing.),
 (w. dat.), *approach, draw* *vim, vi,* (501) f., plur.,
near. *vīrēs, iūm, ibus, strength,*

bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, *power;* (plur.), *strength.*
inlātus, and dative, make *iterum, adv., again, a second*
war upon. *time.*

396.**REVIEW EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Verēmur ut impetum sustineant.* 2. *Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur.* 3. *Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intelēxit.* 4. *Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium fīnibus morābimur.*

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance.
 2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing.
 3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide.
 4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Caesar cum fīnibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit.* 2. *Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod vīrēs deerant.* 3. *Germānī dixērunt*

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī qui suīs amīcīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs līberōsque ūnum in locum convocabant nē tēlīs interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum qui castrīs praeesset reliquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātūs ab hostiūs fīnibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus millibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnes qui eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidi incolae pauci essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

(READING SELECTION 462)

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398. FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
amā, love	amāte	amāre, be loved	amāmini
monē, advise	monēte	monēre, be advised	monēmini
mitte, send	mittite	mittere, be sent	mittimini
cape, take	capite	capere, be taken	capimini
audi, hear	audite	audire, be heard	audimini

¹ more. ² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re and the second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* are *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

Give the imperative forms in the second person of *gerō*, *videō*, *dicō*, *mūniō*, *accipiō*, *sequor*, *laudō*.

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
1ST PER.	<i>laudem</i> , let me <i>nē laudem</i> , let me not praise praise	
2D PER.	<i>laudā</i> , praise	<i>nōli laudāre</i> , do not praise
3D PER.	<i>laudet</i> , let him <i>nē laudet</i> , let him not praise praise	
1ST PER.	<i>laudēmus</i> let us <i>nē laudēmus</i> , let us not praise praise	
2D PER.	<i>laudāte</i> , praise	<i>nōlite laudāre</i> , do not praise
3D PER.	<i>laudent</i> , let them <i>nē laudent</i> , let them not praise praise	

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative; instead *nōli* or *nōlite* (pres. imperative of *nōlō*, *be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

<i>praeficiō, ere, praefēci, praefectus, set over, put in charge of.</i>	<i>revertor, reverti, reverti, re-versus,¹ dep., turn back, return.</i>
<i>referō, referre, rettuli, relā-tus, carry back; referre pedem, retreat.</i>	<i>animadvertisō, ere, animad-verti, animadversus (ani-mus + ad + vertō), turn the mind to, notice.</i>
<i>ad multam noctem, till late at night.</i>	<i>adversus, a, um, opposite, facing, hostile; adversō colle, up the hill.</i>
<i>longē, adv., far, far off.</i>	
<i>Ariovistus, I, m., Ariovistus, chief of the Germans.</i>	

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest.
 2. Hostium ducēs cōnāti sunt castellum, cui praeerat lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātis, oppidō appropinquāre contendit. 5. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, virī summā grātiā apud suōs ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli respondērunt, "Nōlīte Rōmānīs bellum In-ferre." 2. Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter pugnēmus² nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, has only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. ² Notice that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūratiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē revertī iussit. 5. Cum virēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Signa inferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbi captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostri ad multam noctem contendissent, nēmō ab hostibus occisus est. 9. Arioistus Caesari “Cūr” inquit “in meōs fīnēs venīs?” 10. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē Caesar cōnstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labiēnus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Carefully distinguish the difference in English between a verbal noun and a verbal adjective. They both end in *-ing*, the verbal noun being used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of “is.”)

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a *verbal noun*. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (516–520). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

NOM.	{ <i>Vidēre est crēdere, seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject).
GEN.	{ <i>Ars vivendi</i> (gerund), <i>the art of living.</i> <i>Vēnit amicōrum videndōrum causā</i> (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends).</i>
DAT. ¹	{ <i>Vix his rēbus administrandis tempus dabātur</i> (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for manag- ing these things.</i>
Acc.	{ <i>Vēnit ad pugnandum</i> (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting).</i> <i>Vēnit ad amicōs videndōs</i> (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends).</i>
ABL.	{ <i>Mēns descendō alitur</i> (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning.</i> <i>Conlocūti sunt dē cōsiliis faciendis</i> (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans.</i>

Observe

- That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; *ad* and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used when there is an object.
3. That purpose may be expressed by **ad** and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by **causā** following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

coniōcīō , <i>ere</i> , coniēclī , <i>coniectus</i> ,	causa , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>cause, reason</i> ;
<i>throw, hurl.</i>	<i>abl.</i> , <i>for-the-sake-of, in</i>
dēlīgō , <i>ere</i> , dēlēglī , <i>dēlēctus</i> ,	<i>order-to</i> (after a genitive).
<i>select, choose. [opportunity.</i>	cupidus , <i>a</i> , <i>um, desirous (of)</i> ,
spatiūm , <i>i</i> , <i>n., space, time,</i>	<i>eager (for) (with genitive).</i>
discō , <i>ere</i> , didici , <i>—, learn.</i>	dēnique , <i>adv., finally, at last.</i>
turrīs , <i>is</i> , <i>f., tower.</i>	iam , <i>adv., now, already, soon.</i>

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertisite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropinquantibus, castrīs lēgātūm praeſicere. 3. Omnibus Gallīs superātīs, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 5. Dic nōbīs quōs Rōmae viderīs.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Militēs finem pugnandi fēcērunt. 3. Militēs cupidī potiendī oppidī erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficultimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatiū tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castris dēlēgit. 7. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. 8. Com-

plūrēs p̄rincipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās annum satis esse Helvētiī arbitrābantur. 10. Galli dē bellō Rōmānīs īferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropīnquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
intellegō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertor	cōsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praeficiō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) tollō in the first person singular, and of (2) cōnor in the third person plural.

¹ for defending: genitive case.

² to fortify: express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

TENSE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. { Act. Pass.					
Imperf. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Pass.					
Perf. { Act. Pass.					
Plup. { Act. Pass.					
Fut. { Act. Perf. { Pass.					

(READING SELECTION 463)

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETII

412. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse fīnitimōs. Ob eās rēs ei mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hie-mābant,¹ ex hībernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitūm prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciāe extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciāe diē² septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogib⁹ in Segusiāvōs exercitūm dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciām trāns Rhodanūm prīmī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from *hiems*? ² Why ablative?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using "if," "if not," "unless," by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.

2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415.

SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. *Si hoc faciunt, bene est, if they are doing this, it is well.*
2. *Si hoc fecerunt, bene fuit, if they did this, it was well.*
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; it *merely makes a supposition*.
- b. That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416.

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. *Si hoc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.*
2. *Si hoc fecissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.*
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is not now well, the second sentence that it was not well.
- b. That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. *Sī meus amīcus Rōmae est, laetus sum.* 2. *Sī Helvētiī ācrius Rōmānīs restitissent, nōn victi essent.* 3. *Sī adesset, exire Rōmā parātī essēmus.* 4. *Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit.* 5. *Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem instrūxisset.* 6. *Plūrēs Galli occisi essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent.* 7. *Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proeli committendī sīgnū?*

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Si hoc facient, bene erit, if they do this (i.e. shall do this), it will be well.

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.
- c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

2. That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Si hoc faciant, bene sit, *if they should do this, it would be well.*

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.
- c. That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

I. Present or Past Time.

1. Simple. Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
2. Contrary to Fact.
 - a. Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
 - b. Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

1. Vivid Future — Future¹ indicative in both parts.
2. Less Vivid Future — Present¹ subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of **si** or **nisi**. For example:

¹ For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Principēs Gallōrum victi Rōmam mittentur, the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered (literally, having been conquered), will be sent to Rome.

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Si equitēs cōsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occidēt. 2. Si equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occidānt. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terribimur. 4. Helvētiī flūmen Rhodanum trānsīssent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Si hostēs flūmen trānseant, nostri nōn cōsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the town has been well fortified?

(READING SELECTION 464)

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

O that my friend were here!	} referring to present time, and implying that he is not here.
I wish (that) my friend were here!	
Would that my friend were here!	
O that my friend had been here!	} referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.
I wish (that) my friend had been here!	
Would that my friend had been here!	

424. Examine the following:

1. (*Utinam*) **meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come!* (a wish about the future).
 2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here!* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
 3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here!* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).
- a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
 - b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.
 - c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — **Subjunctive in Wishes.** — *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without utinam; wishes hopeless in present time by utinam with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by utinam with the pluperfect subjunctive.*

426.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Utinam nē Gallī coniūrātiōnem fēcissent! 2. Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat! 3. Utinam hoc facerent! 4. Helvētiī “Utinam” inquiunt¹ “nē altissimis montibus continērēmur!” 5. Utinam nē Germānī populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent! 6. Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!

II. 1. May he always obey the general! 2. I wish we had gone to Athens! 3. Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul! 4. O that he had not persuaded me! 5. May we be killed, if we surrender our arms! 6. Would that we were able to go with you!

LESSON 74**INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES**

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),² follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ Plural of inquit. ² The treatment of main clauses involving command has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem video meus amicus est, *the man whom I see is my friend.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dicit virum quem videat suum amicum esse, *he says that the man whom he sees is his friend.*

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret suum amicum esse, *he said that the man whom he saw was his friend.*

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **video** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dicit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. RULE.—Moods in Indirect Discourse. — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Mīlitēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt.
 2. Dixit mīlitēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse.
 3. Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūniēbat. 4. Dixērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervaenissent, castra mūnivisse. 5. Caesar dixit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsire nōn posse. 6. Arioivistus Caesarī "Volō" inquit "hīs dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agi² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere³ tēcum." 7. Arioivistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.

- II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after audiō. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after dixit. 7. Arioivistus replied that those who have conquered ought to rule⁴ those whom they have conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Āriter pugnātūm est, the battle was fought sharply, or there was sharp fighting (literally, it was sharply fought).

¹ because. ² agō, treat. ³ imperō.

Vōbis hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vōbis hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in -um and -ū. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgāti vēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātūm, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar.*

Hoc diffīcile est factū, *this is difficult to do.*

The supine in -um is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion ; the supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

Helvētii lēgātōs misērunt	{ ut pācem peterent, qui pācem peterent, pācis petendae causā, ad pācem petendam, pācem petitum,	} the Helvētii sent ambassadōrs to seek peace.
Militēs mittuntur	{ ad pugnandum, pugnandi causā,	} the soldiers are sent to fight.

435. RULE. — Supine in -um. — The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.

436. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc est mīrābile dictū. 2. Ariovistus respondit, “Tē ad mē venire oportet.” 3. Prīcipēs Gallōrum ad

Caesarem vēnērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eīs ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculis iūdicāri nōn potest. 6. Helvētii rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Gallī coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dīcit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to² see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

(READING SELECTION 465)

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example:

Laudātūrus est, he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.

For all forms of this conjugation, see 529.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example :

Sciō quem visūrus sit, I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ direction. ² to see his daughters : express in three ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation* or *necessity*. For example:

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised*, or *he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 530.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbis veniendum est**.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūienda, *the city must be fortified*.

Nōbis fortiter pugnandum est, *we ought to (or must) fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesari omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Visūri erāmus; amātūra fuit; monitūrae erant.
2. Nōbis cum Gallis bellum gerendum est. 3. Incolae oppidi ēruptionem erant factūri. 4. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant; aciēs īstruenda, signum dandum, militēs ab opere revocandī erant. 5. Sī victūri sumus, nōbis fortissimē contendendum erit. 6. Soiēbam quid vōs factūri

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolis quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

THE following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; e. g., *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING

(To follow Lesson 3)

441. A DIALOGUE

Ubi est tua patria? America mea patria est; estne tua? Nōn est; mea patria Gallia est. Est terra Eurōpae. Pulchrane Gallia est? Pulchra et lāta terra est ubi longae viae sunt. Suntne silvae tuae patriae magnae? Magnae nōn sunt, parvae sunt. Nōnne vīta fēminārum tuae patriae, pulchra est? Fēminārum bonārum vīta semper pulchra et bona est.

(To follow Lesson 6)

442. A FAITHFUL SERVANT

Lýdus est fidus servus agricolae boni in īsulā. Frūmentum dominī et vīnum in oppidum portat, ubi cibus incolis superbis grātus est. Malus nauta et amīcus in hortō sunt. Nauta servum vocat. “Cūr vīnum, serve, in hortum nōn portās?” Lýdus amīcis vīnum in pōculō¹ parvō dat. Nauta vīnum bonum laudat sed pōculum parvum et inopiam vīni culpat. Pugnant. Lýdus nautam et amīcum superat.² Servō pecūniā dant, et Lýdus, servus fidus, vīnum et frūmentum servat.

(To follow Lesson 9)

443. ROMAN CHILDREN

Eurōpae terra Ītalia est. Rōma magnum in Ītaliā oppidum est. Multae portae, bonae et lātae viae, alba aedificia in oppidō sunt. Horti incolārum superbōrum magni sunt.

¹ cup.

² overcome.

In hortis Mārcī lūdus¹ est. Magister, vir peritus, liberōs convocat. Equī validi parvōs liberōs in hortōs magistrī portant. Cūr mali pueri pugnant? Asperi sunt. Pueri amant ḥella et proelia et sagittās et gladiōs. Puellās tenerās rosae albae in hortis, nova lūna, parvae stellae dēlectant. Magister malōs et pigrōs discipulōs culpat, sed bonōs (discipulōs) amat. Pulchrōs librōs dōna bonīs pueris et puellīs dat. In libris multae fābulae Rōmam oppidum laudant.

(To follow Lesson 12)

444. A ROUGH WOORING

10 Rōma parvum oppidum erat, ubi Rōmulus in terrīs erat. Incolae virī erant, sed fēminaē in oppidō nōn erant. Rōmulī lēgātī multōs agricolās et multās fēminās et pulchrās puellās in oppidum convocāvērunt. Tēlis idōneis, pilis, gladiis, hastis, incolae pugnābant. Fēminās asperum 15 proelium dēlectābat. Sed Rōmulī cōnsilium malum erat. Virī validi puellās tenerās in aedificia portāvērunt. Tum² superbi agricultorū armis Rōmānōs oppugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Rōmulī amīci agricultorū superābant. Tum miserae agricultorū filiae parvōs liberōs in proelium portā- 20 vērunt et virōs³ vocāvērunt: "Semper virōs³ et liberōs amābimus. Cūr pugnātis? Nōnne filiās et filiārum liberōs amātis?"

(To follow Lesson 15)

445. HOW TIBERIUS WON A WIFE

Mārcus, dux cōpiārum Rōmānārum, miles peritus erat. In Galliā cum Helvētiis Rōmāni pugnābant et Mārcus 25 locum hibernis idōneum parāverat. Helvētiī castra Rō-

¹ school.

² then.

³ husbands.

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvīs et agrīs semper dimicābant. Rōmānōrum periculum magnum erat. Multi in castris equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multi et parvi liberi, sed nōn erat cibi cōpia.

Tiberium, fidum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. “Nōnne, periculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam, pulchram filiam meām, amās. Nōnne caput feri Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tullia tuum praemium erit.”

Mox Tiberium cum paucīs militibus albī equī ad castra ¹⁰ Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validi equi et viri erant. Helvētiī magnam praedam, vīnum, frūmentum in castra portāverant. Superāverat vīnum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vīnō periculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, et mox ducis caput ¹⁵ ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fidō Tulliam, filiam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberi virtūs militum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant; magnam frūmenti cōpiam et magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant. ²⁰

(To follow Lesson 18)

446. THE DEFENSE OF THE BRIDGE

Porsena, rēx Clūsi,¹ hostis Rōmānōrum erat. Multis cōpiis militēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat et Rōmam urbem oppugnābat. Longus pōns in flūmine Tiberi lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, et cum feris hostibus dimicat. Magnā virtūte Rōmāni in ponte ²⁵ pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōsulem superāvērunt. Cōnsul pontem dēlēre ² parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Cocles, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dimicāvit. Magnum periculum erat, magna caedēs. Multis corporis vulneribus

¹ Clusium, a town of Etruria.

² destroy.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laeti Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dederunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

447. A STERN FATHER

Brūtus et Valerius cōsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tarquiniō¹ rēge pugnābant. Sed malī filii Brūtī contrā patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucis coniūrātis Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed per Brūtī servum fidum, quod periculō terrēbatur, cōsuli nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiantur.² Ā cōsule filii cum coniūrātis in collem Capitōlinum³ magnā cum celeritātē convocantur. Tum Brūtus hominēs superbōs culpat quod contrā urbem armantur. Pater miser fīliōrum vītam nōn servāvit. Tum militēs hominēs malōs gladiis necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,⁴ magna virtūs ā Rōmānīs grātīs semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

448. THE ROMANS AND THE ELEPHANTS

Pyrrhum, Épirī⁵ rēgem, quod fortis vir bonusque imperātor erat, Tarentī⁶ cīvēs in Ítaliām vocāvērunt. Cum Rōmānīs multis proeliis dīmicāvit Rōmānōsque superāvit, quod elephantōs⁷ in Ítaliām portāverat, quae animālia ad Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānīs nōn vīsa erant. Sed Rōmānī, virī audācēs, pedēs elephantōrum pilīs vulnerābant magna- que animālium caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte militēs cum Pyrrhī cōpiis dīmicāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitib⁹ habēbant.

¹ Tarquin.

² report.

³ Capitoline.

⁴ very brave.

⁵ Epirus, a country northwest of Greece.

⁶ Tarentum, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

⁷ elephants.

(To follow Lesson 27)

449. CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOOL

Carolus¹ Magnus, Francōrum² rēx, imperātorque³ Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit. Ibi filiī et potentium et reliquōrum litterās⁴ discēbant.⁵ Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium liberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Carolis temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs liberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit et "Quod primōrum," inquit,⁶ "filiī estis, fidī discipuli nōnne eritis? Omnes mei cīvēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parem cūram ā magistrīs incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem⁷ augēre cupiō,⁸ quod fortēs mei Franci sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs librīs et litteris superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō disçētis, quod pigrī discipulī nōn servābunt dōna mea meamque amicitiam."

You shall study.

(To follow Lesson 30)

450. BRENNUS, THE GALlic GENERAL, IN ROME

Rōmānī antiquis temporibus cum Gallis, Ītaliae partis¹⁵ incolis, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et ītaliām vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmānī cum Gallis contendērunt, sed hostēs Rōmānōs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbēm Rōmam contendēbant. In urbe neque in portis neque in viis hominēs vidērunt, sed aedificia alta et pulchra²⁰ laudābant. In Forō⁹ sedīlia vidērunt, ubi principēs Rōmānī sedēbant.¹⁰ Gladiis Galli principēs Rōmānōrum necāvērunt. Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Brennum misērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō libertāte Gallis dedērunt. Sed superbis

¹ Charles.

² the Franks.

³ here emperor.

⁴ letters.

⁵ study.

⁶ said (he).

⁷ praise, reputation.

⁸ wish, desire.

⁹ market place, Forum.

¹⁰ sit.

Gallōrum dux gladium in librā¹ conlocāvit et “Vae² victis!” exclāmāvit.³ Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legionēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

242

(To follow Lesson 33)

451. SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

Proeliō asperō militēs contendēbant, multaque corpora et vulnerātōrum et interfectorum hominum in terrā fuērunt. In quibus erat ūnus ē principib⁹ qui ab omnibus propter virtūtem amābātur. Sed vulnerātus ille et vulnere et siti⁴ labōrābat. Cui amīci auxilium dare mātūrāvērunt. Miles illi aquam⁵ in pōculō portāvit. Tum “Hanc aquam,” inquit, “dux Philippe, quam ex flūmine portāvi habēbis. Grāta miserō hominī aqua erit.” Sed Philippus mox militem vulnerātum vīdit qui illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. “Huic militi hanc aquam dabis,” inquit. Nōnne hoc pulchrum factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

452. WILLIAM TELL

15 Helvētia⁶ hodiē libera civitās est, sed nōn semper erat. Temporibus antiquis superbus homō, qui Gesslerus appellābātur, Helvētiae imperium habēbat. Is lignum⁷ in viā cōnstituit, in quō pilleum⁸ posuit, omnēsque qui illā viā iter faciēbant pillei auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Illud 20 sōlus ex incolis Guglielmus⁹ Tellius nōn fēcit. Audivit Gesslerus et territus est. “Quem ille nōn movēbit?” inquit. “Alii idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō liberābitur.”

Ab omnibus Tellius, quod sagittārum peritus erat, laudā-

¹ balance, pair of scales.

² woe.

³ cry out.

⁴ thirst.

⁵ water.

⁶ Switzerland.

⁷ pole.

⁸ cap.

⁹ William.

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōnsilium cēpit. Parvum Tellī puerum in viā conlocāri et mālum¹ in capite pōnī iussit. In mālum Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō ei dīxit: “Nōnne hoc faciēs? Si² nōn faciēs, filium tuum interficiam.” Itaque Tellius sagittam mīsit, quae in mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs qui vīderant Tellī factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus “Cūr alteram cēpistī sagittam?” inquit. “Haec sagitta,” inquit Tellius, “in³ tuam mortem servāta est, quod post pueri mei mortem nūllis moenibus dēfēnsus eris.” Audivit Gesslerus et magnā celeritātē Tellium in vinculis nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbū hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque liberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

453. ARNOLD WINKELRIED

Helvētia Tellī virtūte libera facta erat. Sed incolae,¹⁵ propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs militēs nōn habēbant qui patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs et equitēs, Helvētiae finitimi, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servis habēre cupiēbant. Magnus militum exercitus in Helvētiā missus est. His militibus longae hastae, magni²⁰ gladii, incolis Helvētiae sagittae et saxa erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētii convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastis longis agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās in militēs mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā²⁵ sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppugnābant, sed nūllum militem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illis, cui Arnolodus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exiit itaque⁴ dixit:

¹ apple.

² if.

³ for.

⁴ and thus, and so.

“Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum liberis et uxōre¹ est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vītā patriae meae cīvibusque meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertāti faciam.” Tum, nūllis armīs armātus, in hastās multās hostium corpus suum, ūnus prō omnibus, misit. Amici fortissimi trāns corpus viri audācis, quod humi erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācī animō territi et in fugam datī sunt. Sed Helvētii per omne futūrum tempus liberi remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedi virtūte, quam omnēs semper laudābunt, servātī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Italiae prōvinciā, trium millium pedum altitūdine est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbis “lava” appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus antiquōrum Rōmānōrum pulcher mōns erat, sub quō multi et agricultae et mercātōrēs vicos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum, vinum multum in agrīs et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe p̄incipēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in his oppidis manēbant et hiemem fugiēbant. Sed haec omnia LXXIX post Christum annīs, mēnse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium longārum³ dux, cum Pliniō alterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēnī, qui portus Rōmānus fuit, erat. Ei ēruptiō Vesuvi facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vīdit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.⁵ Itaque nāvē ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque miseris auxilium parābat. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum qui aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discedere coāctus est. Sed saxis illis, dē quibus dīximus, in itinere imperfectus est.

¹ wife. ² Pliny. ³ nāvis longa, a warship. ⁴ grandson. ⁵ smoke.

Omnēs agrī, omnēs vīci, oppida omnia ēruptiōne incēnsa sunt. Post paucōs diēs nihil in terrā reliquī erat. Saxa omnēs agrōs complēverant. Neque oppida illa tria sub monte conlocāta, Stabiae, Herculāneum, Pompēi, per multōs annōs ab ullō homine visa sunt. Hodī autem ei qui in, Italiam iter faciunt omnēs in Campāniā veniunt. Nam vident in his locīs quae ex illis oppidīs remanent — portas, vias cum aedificiis suis, templa dēorum. Multae et pulchrae rēs, quae in incolārum domibus fuērunt, servātæ sunt multaque dē antiquōrum hominum vītā et fortūnā cōgnōscet, qui illās rēs viderit.

(To follow Lesson 45)

455. THE TREACHEROUS SCHOOLMASTER

Falerii,¹ Etrūriae oppidum, a Rōmānis diū obsidēbantur. Sed fortissimī incolae magnā virtūte patriam tūtam ab hostibus servābant. Quōdam diē senex plūrimis cum pueris ex oppidi portā ad castra Rōmāna exiit.¹⁵ Cuius adventum inter castra et oppidum nōbilissimus Rōmānorū dux, Camillus nōmine, exspectābat. Ille autem ad imperātōrem accessit dixitque: "Lūdi magister in oppidi Faleriis sum. Cārissimōs potentium civium filiōs tuae potestātī permittō. Brevi tempore superbī²⁰ incolae, qui liberōs suōs amant, et ipsi in castra tua pervenient et prō liberōrum libertāte Rōmānis civitātem suam dabunt." Turpi magistrī cōsiliō lēnis Camillī animus permōtus est. Puerōs convocāvit eōsque flagellis² malum magistrum pūnire et patrēs suōs dē illius malō animō²⁵ certiōrēs facere iussit. Grātior Faliscis³ Camillī magnitūdō

¹ In Latin, when names of towns that are plural in form are used as subject, the verb is plural; in English the verb is singular, as, Athens was a great city.

² whips.

³ Falisci, the inhabitants of Falerii.

animi quam victoria ipsorum erat. Itaque pacem cum Rōmānis cōfirmāvērunt reīque pūblicae Rōmānae clientēs facti sunt.

(To follow Lesson 48)

456. STORIES OF CAESAR

Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor, dē quō omnēs
 5 vōs multa iam audīvistis plūraque audiētis, iuvenis iter per Hispāniām prōvinciam faciēbat. Nocte ad vicum per
 vēnit, ubi ā principe bene receptus est. Superbior ille
 omni cive Rōmānō erat, quod in suō vicō plūrimū poterat.
 Propter quod Caesaris amici eum culpābant. Sed Caesar,
 10 prūdentissimus vir, dixit: "Superbus princeps nōn est.
 Princeps vīci maior est omnibus qui post pīnum Rōmae
 cīvem sunt."

Idem Caesar cum Pompēiō, duce summō, et cum suis
 cīvibus bellum gessit. Eō tempore in Galliam prōvinciam
 15 prō cōnsule missus erat. Finis autem prōvinciae et Italiae
 flūmen minimē¹ lātum erat, quod Rubicō² appellātur.
 Cuius flūminis in rīpā aciem suam Caesar instrūxit diūque
 exspectābat lēgātōrum, qui dē pāce missi erant, adven-
 tum. Postē autem, Rubicōnem ubi exercitū trānsiit,
 20 "Alea³ iacta est!" exclāmāvit. Ex eō tempore āriter cum
 Pompēiō bellum gessit.

In illō ipsō bellō Pompēius, cuius mīlītēs pares numerō
 Caesaris nōn erant, Brundisiō, quod nōmen est portūs
 Italiae, in Graeciam trānsiit. Caesar ipse mare trānsire
 25 cupiēbat. Sed ventus⁴ asperrimus nāvem in aliam partem
 ēgit. Nautae territi ad terram sē recipere cupiēbant.
 Quibus Caesar, fortissimus vir, respondit:⁵ "Fortiter fac-
 ētis et tūti eritis, quod Caesarem Caesarisque fortūnās por-
 tātis."

¹ adverb of minimus.

² Rubicon.

³ die.

⁴ wind.

⁵ answer.

(To follow Lesson 51)

457. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Prīmis reī pūblicae liberae temporibus Rōmae iuvenis quidam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, vir maximā virtūte sed nōn cōnsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestātē monuit. Itaque illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrābant, cuius belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā militum multitudine ad urbem accesserant eamque castris et vallō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commisērunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminaē 10 Rōmānae ad Veturiā, Coriolāni mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniam convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis parvis in hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūntiātur, prīmō superbissimē 15 eās recēpit. Ubi autem ā sedili suō mātrem vīdit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia "Hostisne filius," inquit, "ad mē venit captaque ā militibus māter tua in tuīs castrīs sum? Grāta mihi vita esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, cīvibus nōn amīcum reperiō. Nōnne in 20 mē, mātrem tuam, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōnstrābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redibis atque urbī Rōmānae libertātem reddēs?" "Nihil turpius, nihil miserius ego tōtā in vitā vidi nec vidēre poterō."

His mātris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra 25 mōvit cīvitātemque liberām servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscis posteā imperfectus est. Fēminis fortissimīs sum-mam laudem Rōmāni dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

¹ tears.² words.

(To follow Lesson 54)

458. THE FAITHFUL WIVES OF WEINSBERG

Imperātor quidam ¹Germānus oppidum mūnitissimum, quod Weinsberg appellātur, quod cīvēs liberī esse cupiēbant, obsidēbat. Cottidiānis proeliis oppidī incolae cum militibus imperātōris pugnantēs nec vincere poterant nec vinci. At ¹ post longum tempus rei frūmentariae inopiā oppidum labōrābat, quod commeātū omni prohibēbātur. Quā dē causā litterās ad imperātōrem scripsērunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestātem dēdidērunt. Ille autem haec dē pāce cōnstituit. Mulierēs omnēs exīre iussit. "Portābitis ex oppidō," inquit, "vōbīscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnēs occīdi iubēbō." Diē proximō, signō datō, exeunt ē portā mulierēs, quārum quaeque virum suum portābat. Tum miserae fēminae sē ad imperātōris pedēs iaciunt. At ¹ ille permōtus viris vitam dōnāvit ² oppidum-
que tūtum ā militibus asperis servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

459. TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Colōni³ Americānī, qui rēgis Britannōrum imperia sibi nocēre crēdēbant, litterās ad rēgem mittere cōnstituērunt, quibus summās Britannōrum iniūriās ⁴ dēmōstrābant. Quās litterās cōnficere ūnus ex nōbiliōribus, Samuel Adams ²⁰ nōmine, ab iis iussus est. Filia autem Samuēlis parva litteris vīsīs patri "Spērō," inquit, "brevi tempore litterās rēgis in manib⁹ futūrās esse." Cui pater respondit: "Ego, mea filia, existimō rēgem superbissimum pedēs suōs in nostris litteris positūrum esse."

²⁵ Militum Britannōrum dux, Gagius ⁵ nōmine, ā colōnis frūmentum cōferrī audiverat, quō sē potitūrum esse spērābat.

¹ but.² give.³ colonists.⁴ wrongs.⁵ Gage.

Erant autem Bostōni¹ viri patriae amantissimi, quī igne plēbi dēmōnstrātūri erant Britannum ducem profectū esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā cīvibus vīsi sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, peritissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscendit² et maximā celeritāte per vīcōs, iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sic tandem³ ad oppidum Lexingtōnium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes⁴ Hancock in amicōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagius quam maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō moniti militēs Britannōs fūgērunt.¹⁰

Fortissimi erant militēs Americāni, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō⁵ quidam ūnum ex suis militibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dicitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: “Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcula portāvi. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis.”¹⁵ Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtōnius arborem⁶ maximam militēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vīdit et eis centuriōnēm auxilium ferre iussit. Ille autem “Num mē centuriōnēm,” inquit, “esse tū scīs?”

(To follow Lesson 60)

460. MORE TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Multi inter Americānōs Washingtōniō, maximō duci, tam²⁰ inimici erant ut ei imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Civis quidam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audivisse dicitur. Summā cum diligentiā accessit ut causam cōgnōseret. Quid autem eum vīdisse arbitrāmini?²⁵ Washingtōnius humī Deum multīs cum lacrimis rogābat ut patriam auxiliō servāret. Cōspectū permōtus, civis rediit neque ab illō vīsus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dixit virum tam bonum Deō persuādēre dēbuisse.

¹ locative, at Boston. ² mount. ³ at length. ⁴ John. ⁵ captain. ⁶ tree.

Philadelphiae¹ exercitus Britannōrum in hibernis erat. Illō tempore Howius,² exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washingtoni, quae praesidiō finitimis castris erant, pelleret cōsiliū cēpit. Semper autem eius cōsiliīs duci Americānōs nūntiātis nē ea perficeret impeditus est. Itaque multā nocte lēgāti et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lȳdiae Darrah nōmine, convēnērunt. Nē cōnsilia audirentur eam cum omnibus suis in domūs superiōrem partem ire coēgit. Ipse in parte inferiōre lēgātōs imperiīs suis summā cum diligentia pārēre iussit. Lȳdia autem, ut omnia quae dīcēbantur audīret, ad ōstium³ accesserat. Ubi lēgāti domum reliquērunt, eam nihil dē cōsiliīs scīre crēdentes, virō sē ad vicum quandam profectūram esse dīxit ut rem frūmentāriam suis comparāret. Quem in vicum ubi vēnit, centuriōni Americānō ea quae audiverat nūntiāvit ita ut Washingtonius dē periculō monitus exercitui Britannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam quae Lȳdia tam fortiter fēcerat ante bellī finem audīvit.

In proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vicum factō Tarletōnius, lēgātus Britannōrum, qui dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō Washingtoniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Postea mulieri cuidam Washingtonium tam ferum esse dīxit ut nōmen suum scribere nōn scīret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōnstrāns “At optimē,” inquit, “suum signum facere scīt.” Illis autem temporibus ei qui scribere nōn sciēbant signum prō nōmine faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

461. THE BURNT HAND

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

¹ locative.

² Howe.

³ door (of house or room).

frumentum nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quidam bellum cōnficere cōnstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō qui rēgem gladiō necāret misērunt. Agricolam sē esse simulāns¹ Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petivit.⁵ Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quandam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcit. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātis interfēcisset, "Rōmānus sum," inquit, "qui patriae meae¹⁰ hostem necāre volui." Quae ubi rēx audīvit, ut igni cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in igni positā, "Ignem tuum," inquit, "minimē vereor. Plūrimi mihi sunt socii, qui tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redibis." Quibus verbīs¹⁵ superbissimis auditīs Porsena iuveni libertātem dōnāvit, magnō civis Rōmāni animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et posteā ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is qui manum sōlam sinistrām habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

462. FOLLOW THE FLAG

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā pro-²⁰ fectus esset, proximō diē in cōspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare exspectantēs vīdit. Tantae autem magnitūdinis nāvēs Rōmānae erant ut terrae appropinquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territi hostiumque tēla veritī militēs Rōmāni nōn eādem quā solebant² virtūte in²⁵ proeliō ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, militēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum militēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is qui decimae legiōnis signum ferēbat, postquam deōs ut sibi

¹ pretending.

² be accustomed.

praesidiō essent rogāvit, "Mē," inquit, "sequēminī, militēs, nisi vultis signum nostrum in hostium manibus esse. Ego quae ab imperātore iussus sum faciam." Haec cum dixisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs signum ferre coepit. Tum 5 Rōmānī cohortāti inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquenter, signum secūti in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Āriter ab utrisque pugnātum est. Rōmānis tamen arma multum prōderant, ita ut summā vi pugnantēs hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69)

463. TWO BRAVE RIVALS

Caesar ē Britanniā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hibernis praefēcit. Ipse in Italiam profectus est. Galli autem absente Rōmānorū imperātore libertāte suā iterum potiri cōnāti sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimis cōpiis circumvēnissent, tantā vi in ea impetum 15 fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur, neque tamen Rōmānorū castra expugnāre potuērunt. Erant in exercitū duo viri fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annis dē ōrdine contendēbant. Ē quibus Pullō, cum acerrimē prō castris pugnārētur, "Quid, 20 Vorēne," inquit, "exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iūdicābit."¹ Haec cum dixisset, ē castris prōcessit et, ubi plūrimi hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmicāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castris tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secūtus est. Pilum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illis 25 interficit. Omnes autem hostēs tēlis in Pullōnem missis prōgredi eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūti cōnāntem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illi auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

¹ decide.

ā Gallis circumventus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectis summō cum clāmōre mīlitum sē in castra recēperit. Sic fortūnā factum est ut inimici alter alterī auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

464. IN LIGHTER VEIN

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,¹ Scipiōnī, summō Rōmā-, nōrum ducī, amicissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scipiō Enni ad domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poētā conloquerētur, servus qui ūstium servābat "Dominus," inquit, "meus abest." Visus tamen erat Ennius ā Scipiōne, in domū superiōre parte sē tenēns. Post paucōs diēs Ennius Scipiōnīs ad domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī "Domī," inquit, "ego nōn sum." Tum Ennius "Ego autem tē et videō et audiō." "Quid?" Scipiō respondit, "ego servō tuō crēdidi: tū mihi ipsi nōn crēdēs?"

Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum illud quod cīvēs nostri alterī cum alteris gessērunt, cīvitati praeerat. Is fābulis saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs qui ad sē veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit. Dēnique tamen morbō² quōdam labōrābat, qui ā nobīs "variola"³ appellātur. Tum medicō⁴ ille "Laetus," inquit, "sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūni cuique dare possum qui habēre cupiat."

Centuriō quīdam, qui ante bellī finem ab exercitū discēdere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impeditus est.²⁵ Cum pārēre nōllet, Shermānus illi "Nisi tū," inquit, "in castra redieris, tē interfici iubēbō." Post paucōs diēs cum Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dixitque: "Lēgātus mē discēderē nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

¹ poet. ² illness. ³ varioloid (a mild form of smallpox). ⁴ physician.

rediisse, mē interfici iussisset." Lincolnius et ad lēgātūm et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illi "Scīsne," inquit, "quid ego putem? Si Shermānus sē mē interfectūrum esse dixisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum 5 id facere et velle et posse."

(To follow Lesson 75)

465. AN EXAMPLE OF ROMAN FORTITUDE

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iis laudātus sit. Inter multa alia nōbilissimum Rēguli factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō prīmō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marique 10 vicerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illīs in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānis Carthāginiēnsēs cōfirmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam mīserunt, ut dē pāce cōfirmandā cīvēs certiōrēs faceret. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicērētur sē, si Rōmānis persuādēre 15 nōn posset, in Africam reversūrum esse. Rōmam profectus Rēgulus in senātūm vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōfirmārent. Haec sunt quae illis dīxit: "Utinam nē ad vōs venire coāctus essem! Rēs mihi turpissima vidēbātur cum nostrōs vīdi ab hostib⁹ manibus 20 vinctis in urbem dūci. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, sī pecūniā datā libertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōsili⁹ praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vītae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victoriā darem. Morte meā incitāti, cīvēs, bellum for- 25 tissimē gerite." Itaque senātūi persuāsit. Cum autem amīcī nē in Africam in vincula rediret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārēre nōluit. Carthāginem rediit, ubi ā Carthāginiēnsib⁹ interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmāni quam maximē incitāti Carthāginiēnsēs vicērunt. Utinam nostra 30 patria semper in suīs finib⁹ tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

466. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnū reliquī; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdedit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁴ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁴ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō reliquī. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitū-dinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītūm accurrit, mātremque⁵ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adulti⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā¹⁵

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² pulsō (*pellō*) frātre, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ but she. ⁴ See 311, 7. *impositōs abiēcit*: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, *imposuit et abiēcit*. ⁵ mātremque sē gessit, *acted like a mother*. ⁶ very often. ⁷ adultī (*adolēscō*), *when grown* (literally, *having grown*). ⁸ lūdicris certāminibus, *with playful contests*. ⁹ From *vīs*; do not confuse with *vir*, *virī*.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs īnsidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātīs pāstōribus Albam² pro-
5 perāvit.

467. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxē-
runt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs īfēstāre
solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad suppli-
cium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscētis vultum cōn-
10 siderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret.
Nam Remus ūris līneāmentīs⁵ erat mātri simillimus aetās-
que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum
Numitōris animum anxiū tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus su-
pervenit, frātrem liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iīsdem locīs, ubi
expositī ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter
eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque
regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit. Sic Rōmulus,
victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis
tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustiās
inrīdēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum Irātus¹³ Rō-
mulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: “Sic¹⁴ deinde, quī-
25 cumque alijs trānsiliet moenia mea!” Ita sōlus potitus
est imperiō¹⁵ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369–374. ² See 237. ³ on the ground that.

⁴ haud . . . āgnōsceret, came very near recognizing his grandson. ⁵ See 157.

⁶ dum, while, regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the im-
perfect; translate “was keeping.” ⁷ restituō. ⁸ condō. ⁹ as to which of the

¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ dēcernō. ¹² its. ¹³ in anger. ¹⁴ Supply pereat,
let him perish, or some similar verb. ¹⁵ For case, see 337.

468. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asylum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiūmque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benignē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: “Cūr nōn fēminī quoque asylum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret⁴ cōnūbium.” Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indīcī⁵ deinde finitīmī spectāculum iubet. Multi¹⁰ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbī, maximē Sabīnī cum liberis et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque⁶ conversae mentēs⁷ cum oculis erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁸

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs¹⁵ raptās⁹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropīnquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹⁰ quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum¹¹ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī¹² exercitum suum²⁰ in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petīt quod Sabīnī in sinistris manibus gererent,¹³ vidēlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, near by. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = esset, would be. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of indīcō, to be announced. ⁶ eō = in spectāculum. ⁷ mentēs cum oculis, minds and eyes alike (literally, minds with eyes). ⁸ The connective, et, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (literally, on account of the seized maidens). ¹⁰ nancīscor. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 435. ¹² sī . . . perdūxisset, if she would lead. ¹³ wore.

dūxit, ubi Tatius scūtis eam¹ obrui iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sic impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

469. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īsignis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmicāns³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitut.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ūrantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.

Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērum haud ita multō post, occīsō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs ita ūordinatīs, cum ad⁹ exercitum lūstrandūm cōtiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirinālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitūta, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirinus est appellātus.

¹ eam obrui iussit, ordered her to be buried. ² et ea, these also. ³ while fighting. ⁴ cadō. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, that it is one thing . . . quite another. ⁷ resistō, held its ground. ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 406, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, he was believed. ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

470. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabinōrum, accītus est. Qui cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima īstituit. Āram Vestae cōnsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit.⁴ Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdōtem creāvit eumque īsignī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmissis, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrī fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī¹⁰ certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmisit. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postridiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ dēlābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferrī¹⁵ posset, Māmurium fabrum ūndecim scūta eādem fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdōtēs lēgit, qui ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdiren.

471. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscrīpsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcit; portās²⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et belli; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabinōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept.

⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent prōcūranda, should be taken care of (i.e. averted). ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādem fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcit, he made a distinction between sacred days and business days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armis esse cīvitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, sīgnificābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem īstitūtīs suis auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitris sē īferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuit, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs contiñeret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitāti prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō extīnctus ī Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

472. MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātū adiit et veniam⁸ trānsfugiēdī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestātē⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōfertissimā turbā prope tribūnal cōstitit.¹⁰ Stīpendium tunc forte militibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī ferē ornātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occīdit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manū pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with Iānus understood, subject of sīgnificābat, when opened.

² sibi esse, that he had: why is sibi dative? ³ eiusque monitū, at her suggestion.

⁴ quem medium, the middle of which. ⁵ perennī aquā: see 303.

⁶ eā pietāte, with such piety. ⁷ sepeliō. ⁸ veniam trānsfugiēdī, permission to go over (to the enemy).

⁹ privilege. ¹⁰ cōsistō. ¹¹ pertrahō.

¹² accēnsō foculō, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statua; quoque eī honōris grātiā cōnstitūta est.

473. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeriō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōnsulibus, tribūnus mīlitum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angustiis Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēdītum collem cōspēxit imminentem hostium castrīs. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³ 10 occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdūcendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem īsēderat undique armātis circumdatō, intempestā nocte per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵ ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est corōnā cīvicā, quae 15 dabātur eī qui⁶ cīvēs in bellō servāsset. Cōsul fuit bellō Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrīque cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrīus cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvōvēret. 20 Inclinante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus dēvōvit. Armātus in equum īsiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs immīsit; corrūt obrutus tēlīs et victōriam suīs reliquit.

¹ Refers to Mūcius. ² Valeriō . . . cōsulibus, *in the consulship of*, etc., abl. absolute; see 316. ³ the summit of the hill. ⁴ per . . . cūstōdiās, through the midst of the enemy's pickets. ⁵ safely. ⁶ one who. ⁷ cum . . . obvēnisset; when the two consuls had dreamed (literally, when it had come to each of the two consuls by a dream). ⁸ ut . . . dēvōvēret is subject of convēnit; translate "it was agreed among them that he whose (utrīus), etc., should," etc. ⁹ Nominative.

474. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duilius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvicit. Qui cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicis vēlōcitatē superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgrediēbātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmicābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, qui rōbore prae-stābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnātāe nāvēs Pūnicāe trīgintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.

Duilius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invicti⁶ terrā iam etiam mari plūrimum⁷ possent. Itaque Duiliō⁸ concessūm est ut per omnem vītam praelūcente fūnāli et praecinente tibīcine ā cēnā redīret.

II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicāe, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmittēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Veritus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā avertit, nam ex illā īfēlīcī pugnā priusquam clādis nūntius domum perveniret quendam ex amīcis Carthāginem mīsit. Qui postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"¹⁰ inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs īstrūctīs ad-vēnerit, num cum eō cōfligere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōfligī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvicit, was the first to conquer. ² manūs ferreās, grappling irons. ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence. ⁵ mergō. ⁶ invicti terrā, victorious on land. ⁷ plūrimum possent, they were supreme. ⁸ Duiliō concessūm est ut, etc., Duilius was allowed to, etc. ⁹ classis āmissae, for losing the fleet. ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, asks your advice as to whether. ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflixit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fierī dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbatur.

475. APPIAS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritatis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōnsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōflectūrum esse iactitābat. Qui cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāset, pullōs nōn exire ē caveā neque vēscī, inrīdēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rē cum, quasi⁴ irātis diis, mīlitēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānīs accepta est: octō eōrum mīllia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vīgintī mīllia capta. Quā rē Claudius posteā ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque ignōminiam voluntāriā morte praevēnit. Ea rē calamitati⁶ fuit etiam Claudiae,⁶ cōnsulis sorōri: quae ā lūdīs pūblicīs revertēns in cōnfertā multitudine aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revīvisceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ eī dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, on the same day that. ² auspicia habēret, was consulting the auspices. ³ Infinitive of edō, to eat. ⁴ quasi irātis diis, because (as they thought) the gods were angry. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, so that. ⁷ = esset. ⁸ gravisque . . . multa, and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

476. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hībernīs est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandī³ hae erant causae: prīmū nōlēbant⁴ nostrū exercitū ad sē⁵ addūcī,⁶ deinde ab nōn-⁵ nullis Gallīs sollicitābantur. Hī populī Rōmānī exercitū hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnūlli mōbilitātē et levitātē animī novīs⁷ imperiīs studēbant. Ab nōnnūlli etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iīs qui condūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem⁹ imperiō¹⁰ nostrō cōsequī poterant.

CHAPTER II

477. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōnscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliā cum hīs legiōnibus Quīntūm Pedium¹⁴ lēgātūm mīsit. Ipse paucīs post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitū vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manū cōgī et exercitū Belgārum in ūnum locū condūcī. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficisci¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, one another (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led.

⁷ novīs imperiīs, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ eam rem . . . cōsequī, to do this. ¹⁰ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹¹ See map of Gaul, page 10. ¹² From cōnscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndēim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

478. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, qui “Nōs” inquiunt “omnia in³, fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidis³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum¹⁰ incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentīre.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

479. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sīc reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānis Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs¹⁵, propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrīsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibitis eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum. ² ex Belgīs, of the Belgae. ³ oppidis recipere = in oppida recipere. ⁴ From coniungō. ⁵ from conspiring.

⁶ Teutonīs . . . prohibitis, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.

⁷ from entering. ⁸ deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.

⁹ omnia explorāta, full information.

explorāta Rēmī dicēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōnficere armāta millia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.
 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque tōtius bellī sum-
 mam omnium voluntāte dēferrī.

CHAPTER V

480. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND
ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātū ad sē con-
 10 venīre pīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit.
 Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut
 manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās
 15 Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūixerint⁴ et eōrum
 agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit.
 Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās
 ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vīdit, flūmen Axonam
 exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit.
 Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat
 20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In
 eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā
 parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex co-
 hortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim
 vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnire iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is memoriā, 479, line 18, ablative?
² on. ³ ad diem, to the very day. ⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ Quae rēs,
 this position, i.e. crossing the river. ⁶ quae . . . essent, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

481. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF THE REMI

Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīllia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtis moenibus² undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine³ factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīebat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistēndī potestās erat nūlli.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, qui tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad Cae-sarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

482. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem⁶ ducib⁹ ūsus⁷ quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus spēs potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dē-populātī, multīs vīcīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, ad castra Cae-saris omnibus cōpīs contendērunt et ab⁹ mīllibus passuum

¹ sustentātum est, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*).
² Dative, governed by circumiectā. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in nūntium mittit. ⁶ īsdem ducib⁹, *the same persons as guides*. ⁷ using. ⁸ For construction, see 294, 295. ⁹ An adverb, *away, off*.

minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut¹ fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius millibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

483. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

Caesar propter multitūdinem hostium et propter opiniō-
nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottidiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid² hostis virtūte posset et quid nos-trī audērent periclitābātur.³ Nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit. Locus prō castrīs ad aciem īstruendam erat nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-lulum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum⁴ aduersus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īstrūcta occupāre poterat. Ab⁵ utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit cir-citer passuum quādringentōrum et ad⁶ extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īstrūxisset, hostēs ab⁵ lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās⁷ īstrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

484. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exer-citum. Hanc sī nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant⁸;

¹ as: ut with the indicative means "as" or "when." ² quid . . . posset, what the enemy could do by their valor. ³ he tried to ascertain. ⁴ tantum patēbat quantum locī, spread over as much space as. ⁵ on. ⁶ ad extrēmās fossās, at the ends of the trenches. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ were waiting to see.

nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut¹ impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs, prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potu-¹⁰ issent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

485. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impeditōs in flūmine aggressi¹, magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁵ interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē⁶ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt², neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredī pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredierentur, *to attack*, depending upon *parātī erant*. ² secundiōre . . . nostrīs, abl. absolute; since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men. ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of *trādūcere cōnātī sunt*. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). ⁷ unfavorable.

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque revertī ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in alienīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāiae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs³ persuādērī ut diūtiūs morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

486. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ērdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitū equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce, cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemīsit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīllia passuum pōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.
 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum⁷ fuit diēi spatiū, sub occāsum sōlis dēstītērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁸ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, that it was best. ² consideration. ³ Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, these could not be persuaded (literally, it could not be persuaded these). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, they made their departure seem. ⁵ quā dē causā, why. ⁶ See 364. ⁷ quantum . . . spatiū, as the length of the day allowed. ⁸ as.

CHAPTER XII

487. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUSSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postridiē eius diēi Caesar in finēs Suessionum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōflectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem expug-⁵ nāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vīneis¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitūdine operum et celeritāte Rōmānorū permōti Suessionēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et potentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant. ¹⁰

CHAPTER XIII

488. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptis armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessionēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Qui cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs¹⁵ maiōrēs⁵ nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁶ manibus zo suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² moved, from agō. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ potentibus Rēmīs, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ pandō.

CHAPTER XIV

489. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācūs facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduāe fuisse: impulsōs ab suis pīncipibūs ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsili pīncipēs¹ fuissent,² 5 quod³ intellegērent² quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcerit,² Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, 10 quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērint.²

CHAPTER XV

490. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVI

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritātē⁶ atque hominum 15 multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribūs⁷; patī nihil vīnī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferrī: esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ authors. ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427.—cōsuērint = cōsuēverint. ³ because. ⁴ Quod . . . fēcerit, if he should do this.

⁵ sī . . . inciderint, whatever wars occurred. ⁶ For construction, see 303.

⁷ See 231. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ because.

sent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ullām condicōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

491. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius millia pas-⁵ suum decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cō-sēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā¹ cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātūcōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in¹⁰ eum locum coniēcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitū⁵ aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

492. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā⁶ iter face-¹⁵ rent, quidam ex hīs nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt. Hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸ negōtī, cum pīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sar-
cinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque dīreptīs futūrum⁹²⁰ ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nerviī autem antīquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent,

¹ ūnā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātīs. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 231. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futūrum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae īstar mūrī mūnimenta praebērent. His rēbus iter agminis nostrī impeditum² īrī Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

493. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs īfīmus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitū vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

494. THE NERVI CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs. Sed quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁶ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī, cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērēt ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ īsequī nōn audēbant.

¹ Hedges, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briers to grow among them. ² impeditum īrī; future passive infinitive.

³ at the foot. ⁴ ab superiōre parte, in the upper part. ⁵ along. ⁶ See 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with hostēs understood.

Interim legionēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs qui in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiis p̄tōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac p̄tōturbātīs, incrēdibilī cele-⁵ ritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs vidē-¹⁰ rentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendē-¹⁵ runt.

10

CHAPTER XX

495. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. SPLENDID DISCIPLINE
OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum p̄pōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlītēs, aciēs īstruenda, mīlītēs cohortandī, sīgnūm dan-dūm. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostiū impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae¹⁵ rēs erant subsidiō⁵ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ militūm, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar dis-cēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnqui-²⁰ tātem et celeritātem hostiū nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, after laying out the work. Dīmēnsō from dīmētior.
² in manibus nostrīs, close upon us. ³ adversō colle, up the hill. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescri-bere . . . poterant, they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsī). ⁸ his (respective). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . at all. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, whatever seemed best.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

496. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN **-ā-**

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stella	-a	stellae	-ae
GEN.	stellae	-ae	stellārum	-ārum
DAT.	stellae	-ae	stellis	-is
ACC.	stellam	-am	stellās	-ās
ABL.	stellā	-ā	stellis	-is

497. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN **-o-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN.	horti	-i	dōni	-i
DAT.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

PLURAL

NOM.	horti	-i	dōna	-a
GEN.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is
ACC.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **hortē**.

SINGULAR

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	filius
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī, -iī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō
ACC.	puerum	agrūm	virūm	filiūm
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō

PLURAL

NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filiōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filiōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filiī**.

498.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

	SINGULAR				CASE ENDINGS FOR CONSONANT STEMS	
NOM.	dux	miles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT.	duci	militi	virtūti	capiti	-i	-i
ACC.	ducem	militem	virtūtem	caput	-em	
ABL.	duce	milite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

PLURAL

NOM.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN.	ducum	militum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT.	ducibus	militibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL.	ducibus	militibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

	SINGULAR				
NOM.	cōsul	homō	pater	corpus	
GEN.	cōsulis	hominis	patris	corporis	
DAT.	cōsuli	hominī	patri	corpori	
ACC.	cōsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus	
ABL.	cōsule	omine	patre	corpore	
	PLURAL				
NOM.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora	
GEN.	cōsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum	
DAT.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus	
ACC.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora	
ABL.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus	
	δ. -I- STEMS				CASE ENDINGS FOR -I- STEMS
	SINGULAR				M. AND F. N.
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālis	-is -is
DAT.	collī	caedi	montī	animālī	-i -i
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animāli	-e -i
	PLURAL				
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālia	-ēs -ia
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālium	-ium -ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus -ibus
ACC.	collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālia	-is, ēs -ia
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālibus	-ibus -ibus

499. FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -U-

	SINGULAR			
	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsus	-us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsui, ū	-ul, ū	cornū	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	-um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

	MASC.	CASE	PLURAL ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsūs		-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuum		-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	cāsibus		-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs		-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus		-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

500. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs	
GEN.	diēl	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēl	-ērum	
DAT.	diēl	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēl	-ēbus	
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs	
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus	

501. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	SINGULAR		
NOM.	vir	vīs	deus
GEN.	virī	—	dei
DAT.	virō	—	deō
ACC.	virum	vim	deum
ABL.	virō	vī	deō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	virī	vīrēs	dei, di, di
GEN.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deum
DAT.	virīs	vīribus	deis, diis, dis
ACC.	virōs	vīrēs	deōs
ABL.	virīs	vīribus	deis, diis, dis
	SINGULAR		
NOM.	senex	iter	domus
GEN.	senis	itineris	domūs
DAT.	senī	itinerī	domui, ū
ACC.	senem	iter	domum
ABL.	sene	itinere	domō, ū

PLURAL			
NOM.	senēs	itinera	domūs
GEN.	senum	itinерum	domuum, ḫrum
DAT.	senibus	itinеribus	domibus
ACC.	senēs	itinera	domōs, ūs
ABL.	senibus	itinеribus	domibus

ADJECTIVES

502. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonis
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonis

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberi	liberae	liberi
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberum
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	liberi	liberae	libera
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs	liberis
ACC.	liberōs	liberās	libera
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs	liberis

	MASC.	SINGULAR	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	niger		nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī		nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō		nigrae	nigrō
ACC.	nigrum		nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō		nigrā	nigrō
		PLURAL		
NOM.	nigrī		nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum		nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs		nigris	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrōs		nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs		nigris	nigrīs

503.

THIRD DECLENSION

	MASC.	SINGULAR	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer		ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris		ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācri		ācri	ācri
ACC.	ācrem		ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācri		ācri	ācri
		PLURAL		
NOM.	ācrēs		ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium		ācriūm	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus		ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs, ēs		ācrīs, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus		ācribus	ācribus

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
GEN.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
DAT.	facili	facili	ferāci	ferāci
ACC.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
ABL.	facili	facili	ferāci, e	ferāci, e

		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilēs	facilia	ferācēs
GEN.	faciliūm	faciliūm	ferāciūm
DAT.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus
ACC.	faciliſ, ēs	facilia	ferācis, ēs
ABL.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus

504. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium
DAT.	amanti	amanti	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantis, ēs
ABL.	amante, i	amānte, i	amantibus
NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium
DAT.	eunti	eunti	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntis, ēs
ABL.	eunte, i	eunte, i	euntibus

505. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alii	aliae
GEN.	aliūs	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs
ACC.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	aliōs	aliās
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliis
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
GEN.	ūnlus	ūnlus	ūnius	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnlī	ūnlī	ūnlī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mille	millia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	millium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	millia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus

506.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōcior, vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similior, similius	simillimus, a, um

507.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, is
ABL.	lātiōre, i	lātiōre, i	lātiōribus
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is
ABL.	—	—	plūribus

508.

POSITIVE	
bonus, a, um	
malus, a, um	
magnus, a, um	
parvus, a, um	
multus, a, um	
multi, ae, a	
vetus, veteris	
senex, senis	
iuvensis, e	
exterus	
inferus	
posterus	

superus superior

(Lacking positive supplied
by adverb or preposition)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[cis, citrā, <i>this side</i>]	citerior	citimus
[in, intrā, <i>within</i>]	interior	intimus
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior	primus
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior	proximus
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior	ultimus

509.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (<i>carus</i>)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (<i>pulcher</i>)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (<i>fortis</i>)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (<i>facilis</i>)	facilius	facillimē
bene (<i>bonus</i>)	melius	optimē
male (<i>malus</i>)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimūm
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

510.

CARDINALS

	NUMERALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, a, um		primus, a, um
2. duo, duae, duo		secundus (<i>or alter</i>)
3. trēs, tria		tertius
4. quattuor		quārtus
5. quīnque		quīntus
6. sex		sex̄tus
7. septem		septimus
8. octō		octāvus
9. novem		nōnus
10. decem		decimus
11. ūndecim		ūndecimus
12. duodecim		duodecimus
13. tredecim		tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim		quartus decimus
15. quīndecim		quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim		sex̄tus decimus
17. septendecim		septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī		duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī		ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīgintī		vīcēsimus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> { ūnus et vīgintī		{ vīcēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> { ūnus et vīcēsimus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> { duo et vīgintī		{ vīcēsimus secundus <i>or</i> { alter et vīcēsimus

CARDINALS

28. duodētrīgintā
 29. ūndētrīgintā
 30. trīgintā
 40. quadrāgintā
 50. quīnquāgintā
 60. sexāgintā
 70. septuāgintā
 80. octōgintā
 90. nōnāgintā
 100. centum
 101. { centum ūnus *or*
 centum et ūnus
 200. ducentī, ae, a
 300. trecentī
 400. quadringentī
 500. quīngentī
 600. sescentī
 700. septingentī
 800. octingentī
 900. nōngentī
 1,000. mille
 2,000. duo millia
 100,000. centum millia

ORDINALS

- duodētrīcēsimus
 ūndētrīcēsimus
 trīcēsimus
 quadrāgēsimus
 quīnquāgēsimus
 sexāgēsimus
 septuāgēsimus
 octōgēsimus
 nōnāgēsimus
 centēsimus
 { centēsimus prīmus *or*
 { centēsimus et prīmus
 ducentēsimus
 trecentēsimus
 quadringentēsimus
 quīngentēsimus
 sēscentēsimus
 septingentēsimus
 octingentēsimus
 nōngentēsimus
 millēsimus
 bis millēsimus
 centiēs millēsimus

PRONOUNS

511. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
GEN.	meī	{ nostrum, nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum, vestrī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.)

SING.	PLUR.
—	—

suī	suī
-----	-----

sibi	sibi
------	------

sē(sēsē)	sē(sēsē)
----------	----------

sē(sēsē)	sē(sēsē)
----------	----------

512.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	F.	N.	V.	F.	N.	
NOM.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	F.	N.	V.	F.	N.	
NOM.	iste	istā	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	F.	N.	V.	F.	N.	
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illi	illi	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	F.	N.	V.	F.	N.	
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. <i>idem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
GEN. <i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>		<i>eōrun-</i>	<i>eārun-</i>	<i>eōrun-</i>
DAT. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>		<i>ēdem</i>	<i>ēdem</i>	<i>ēdem</i>
ACC. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>		<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
ABL. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>		<i>īsdem</i>	<i>īsdem</i>	<i>īsdem</i>

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>		<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN. <i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>		<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>		<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
ACC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>		<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>		<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

513.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	
GEN. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	
DAT. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	
ACC. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	
ABL. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	

514.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM. <i>quis</i> (<i>qui</i>)	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>)	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	
GEN. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	
DAT. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	
ACC. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>)	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	
ABL. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	

515.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

516. FIRST CONJUGATION. VERBS IN ā

PRIN. PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus — love

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

I love, am loving, do love

PRESENT

I am loved, am being loved

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris, re	amāminī
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

I was loving, loved, did love

IMPERFECT

I was loved, was being loved

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

I shall love

FUTURE

I shall be loved

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

I have loved, loved

PERFECT

I have been loved, was loved

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus sum	amātī sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, ēre	est	sunt

I had loved

PLUPERFECT

I had been loved

amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
amāverat	amāverant	erat	erānt

I shall have loved

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been loved

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus erō	amātī erimus
amāveris	amāveritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
amāverit	amāverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

ACTIVE		IMPERFECT		• PASSIVE	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural		
amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur		
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, re	amārēmini		
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur		
		PERFECT			
amāverim	amāverimus	amātus sim	amāti sīmus		
amāveris	amāveritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis		
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint		
		PLUPERFECT			
amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus essem	amāti essēmus		
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis		
amāvisset	amāvissent	esset	essent		
		IMPERATIVE			
		PRESENT			
2. amā, love thou	2. amāte, love ye	2. amāre, be thou loved	2. amāminī, be ye loved		
		FUTURE			
2. amātō, thou shalt love	2. amātōte, you shall love	2. amātor, thou shalt be loved	2. _____		
3. amātō, he shall love	3. amantō, they shall love	3. amātor, he shall be loved	3. amantor, they shall be loved		
		INFINITIVE			
amāre, to love		PRESENT	amāri, to be loved		
amātūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to love		FUTURE	amātūm iñi, to be about to be loved		
amāvisse, to have loved		PERFECT	amātus (a, um) esse, to have been loved		
		PARTICIPLES			
amāns, antis, loving		PRESENT	_____	_____	
amātūrus, a, um, about to love		FUTURE	GER. amandus, a, um, to be loved		
_____	_____	PERFECT	amātus, a, um, having been loved, loved		
		GERUND			
GEN. amandī, of loving		ACC. amandum, loving			
DAT. amandō, for loving		ABL. amandō, by loving			
		SUPINE			
amātūm			amātū		

517. SECOND CONJUGATION. VERBS IN ē

PRIN. PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monui, monitus — advise**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRESENT

PASSIVE

*I advise, am advising, do advise I am advised, am being advised**Singular**Plural**Singular**Plural*

moneō

monēmus

moneor

monēmur

monēs

monētis

monēris, re

monēminī

monet

monent

monētur

monentur

I was advising, advised, did advise IMPERFECT I was advised, was being advised

monēbam

monēbāmus

monēbar

monēbāmur

monēbās

monēbātis

monēbāris, re

monēbāminī

monēbat

monēbant

monēbātur

monēbāntur

I shall advise

FUTURE

I shall be advised

monēbō

monēbimus

monēbor

monēbīmur

monēbis

monēbitis

monēberis, re

monēbīminī

monēbit

monēbunt

monēbitur

monēbūntur

I have advised, advised

PERFECT

I have been advised, I was advised

monui

monuimus

monitus sum

monitī sumus

monuistī

monuistis

(a, um) es

(ae, a) estis

monuit

monuērunt, ēre

est

sunt

I had advised

PLUPERFECT

I had been advised

monueram

monuerāmus

monitus eram

monitī erāmus

monuerās

monuerātis

(a, um) erās

(ae, a) erātis

monuerat

monuerant

erat

erant

I shall have advised

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been advised

monuerō

monuerimūs

monitus erō

monitī erimūs

monueris

monueritis

(a, um) eris

(ae, a) eritis

monuerit

monuerint

erit

erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam

moneāmus

monear

moneāmur

moneās

moneātis

moneāris, re

moneāminī

moneat

moneant

moneātur

moneantur

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
		PERFECT	
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monueris	monuerītis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint
		PLUPERFECT	
monuissēm	monuissēmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. monē, ad- vise thou	2. monēte, ad- vise ye	2. monēre, be thou advised	2. monēmini, be ye advised
---------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

FUTURE

2. monētō, thou shalt advise	2. monētōte, you shall advise	2. & 3. monētor, thou shalt (he shall) be ad- vised	2. — —
3. monētō, he shall advise	3. monētō, they shall advise	3. monētor, they shall be advised	

INFINITIVE

monēre, to advise	PRESENT	monēri, to be advised
monitūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to advise	FUTURE	monitum īrī, to be about to be advised
monuisse, to have advised	PERFECT	monitus (a, um) esse, to have been advised

PARTICIPLES

monēns, entis, advising	PRESENT	— — —
monitūrus, a, um, about to advise	FUTURE	GER. monendus, a, um, to be advised
— — —	PERFECT	monitus, a, um, having been advised, advised

GERUND

GEN. monēndī, of advising	Acc. monēndum, advising
DAT. monēndō, for advising	ABL. monēndō, by advising

SUPINE

monitum	monitū
---------	--------

518. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN e

PRIN. PARTS: dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, dūctus — lead

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

I lead, am leading, do lead

Singular Plural

dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcīt	dūcunt

I was leading, led, did lead

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

I shall lead

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcēt	dūcētent

I have led, led

dūxi	dūximus
dūxisti	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt, ēre

I had led

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

I shall have led

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

PASSIVE

I am led, am being led

Singular Plural

dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris, re	dūcimini
dūcitur	dūcuntur

I was led, was being led

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris, re	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbātūr	dūcēbāntur

I shall be led

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris, re	dūcēmini
dūcētūr	dūcentur

I have been led, was led

ductus sum	ductī sumus
(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
est	sunt

I had been led

ductus eram	ductī erāmus
(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
erat	erant

I shall have been led

ductus erō	ductī erimus
(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

dūcāmur
dūcāmini
dūcantur

dūcerēmur
dūcerēmini
dūcerentur

ACTIVE

PERFECT

PASSIVE

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
dūixerim	dūxerimus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint
		PLUPERFECT	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxisſes	dūxissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2. dūc, ¹ lead
thou | 2. dūcite, lead
ye | 2. dūcere, be
thou led | 2. dūcimini,
be ye led |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|

FUTURE

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. dūcītō, thou
shall lead | 2. dūcītōte, ye
shall lead | 2. dūcītor, thou
shall be led | 2. —— |
| 3. dūcītō, he
shall lead | 3. dūcūntō, they
shall lead | 3. dūcītor, he
shall be led | 3. dūcūntor, they
shall be led |

INFINITIVE

dūcere, to lead	PRESENT	dūcī, to be led
ductūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to lead	FUTURE	ductum irī, to be about to be led
dūxisse, to have led	PERFECT	ductus (a, um) esse, to have been led

PARTICIPLES

dūcēns, entis, leading	PRESENT	—	—
ductūrus, a, um, about to lead	FUTURE	GER. dūcēndus, a, um, to be led	—
—	PERFECT	ductus, having been led, led	—

GERUND

GEN. dūcēndi, of leading	ACC. dūcēndum, leading
DAT. dūcēndō, for leading	ABL. dūcēndō, by leading

SUPINE

ductum	ductū
--------	-------

¹ dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have as present imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in -e, as gerō, imperative gere.

519. FOURTH CONJUGATION. VERBS IN I

PRIN. PARTS: *audiō, ire, audīvi, audītus — hear*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

*I hear, am hearing,
do hear*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audīor</i>	<i>audīmūr</i>
<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiātīs</i>	<i>audiāris, re</i>	<i>audiāmīnī</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiānt</i>	<i>audiātūr</i>	<i>audiāntūr</i>

*I was hearing, heard,
did hear*

<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmūr</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbātīs</i>	<i>audiēbāris, re</i>	<i>audiēbāmīnī</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbānt</i>	<i>audiēbātūr</i>	<i>audiēbāntūr</i>

I shall hear

<i>audiām</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiār</i>	<i>audiēmūr</i>
<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiētīs</i>	<i>audiēris, re</i>	<i>audiēmīnī</i>
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audiēnt</i>	<i>audiētūr</i>	<i>audiēntūr</i>

I have heard, heard

<i>audīvī</i>	<i>audīvīmus</i>	<i>audītūs sum</i>	<i>audiītī sumūs</i>
<i>audīvīstī</i>	<i>audīvīstīs</i>	<i>(a, um) es</i>	<i>(ae, a) estīs</i>
<i>audīvit</i>	<i>audīvērunt, ēre</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

I had heard

<i>audīverām</i>	<i>audīverāmūs</i>	<i>audītūs erām</i>	<i>audiītī erāmūs</i>
<i>audīverās</i>	<i>audīverātīs</i>	<i>(a, um) erās</i>	<i>(ae, a) erātīs</i>
<i>audīverat</i>	<i>audīverānt</i>	<i>erāt</i>	<i>erānt</i>

I shall have heard

<i>audīverō</i>	<i>audīverīmūs</i>	<i>audītūs erō</i>	<i>audiītī erīmūs</i>
<i>audīveris</i>	<i>audīverītīs</i>	<i>(a, um) erīs</i>	<i>(ae, a) erītīs</i>
<i>audīverit</i>	<i>audīverīnt</i>	<i>erīt</i>	<i>erīnt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>audiām</i>	<i>audiāmūs</i>	<i>audiār</i>	<i>audiāmūr</i>
<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiātīs</i>	<i>audiāris, re</i>	<i>audiāmīnī</i>
<i>audiāt</i>	<i>audiānt</i>	<i>audiātūr</i>	<i>audiāntūr</i>

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmūr
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur
PERFECT			
audiverim	audiverimus	auditus sim	auditū sīmus
audiveris	audiveritis	(a, um) sīs	(ae, a) sītis
audiverit	audiverint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus essem	auditū essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
audivisset	audivissent	esset	essent
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
2. audī, hear thou	2. audīte, hear ye	2. audīre, be thou heard	2. audīmini, be ye heard
FUTURE			
2. auditō, thou shall hear	2. auditōte, you shall hear	2. auditor, thou shall be heard	2. ——
3. auditō, he shall hear	3. audiuntō, they shall hear	3. auditor, he shall be heard	3. audiuntor, they shall be heard
INFINITIVE			
audire, to hear	PRESENT		audirī, to be heard
auditūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to hear	FUTURE		auditum īrī, to be about to be heard
audivisse, to have heard	PERFECT		auditus (a, um) esse, to have been heard
PARTICIPLES			
audiēns, ientia, hearing	PRESENT		—
auditūrus, a, um, about to hear	FUTURE		GER. audiendus, a, um, to be heard
—	PERFECT		auditus, having been heard, heard
GERUND			
GEN. audiendi, of hearing	ACC.		audiendum, hearing
DAT. audiendō, for hearing	ABL.		audiendō, by hearing
SUPINE			
auditum	auditū		

520. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *iō*PRIN. PARTS: *capiō, ere, cēpli, captus*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

I take, am taking, do take

Singular

*capiō**capis**capit*

Plural

*capimus**capitis**capiunt*

PASSIVE

I am taken, am being taken

Singular

*capior**caperis, re**capitur*

Plural

*capimur**capimini**capiuntur*

IMPERFECT

*I was taking, took, did take**capiēbam**capiēbās**capiēbat**I was taken, was being taken**capiēbar**capiēbāris, re**capiēbātur**capiēbāmur**capiēbāmīni**capiēbāntur*

I shall take

FUTURE

I shall be taken

*capiam**capiēs**capiet**capiar**capiēris, re**capiētūr**capiēmūr**capiēmīni**capiēntūr*

PERFECT

*I have taken, took**cēpi**cēpisti**cēpit**I have been taken, I was taken**captus sum**(a, um) es**est**captī sumus**(ae, a) estis**sunt*

I had taken

PLUPERFECT

I had been taken

*cēperam**cēperās**cēperat**captus eram**(a, um) erās**erat**captī erāmus**(ae, a) erātis**erant*

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have taken**I shall have been taken**cēperō**cēperis**cēperit**captus erō**(a, um) eris**erit**captī erimus**(ae, a) eritis**erunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*capiam**capiās**capiat**capiāmus**capiātis**capiānt**capiar**capiāris, re**capiātūr**capiāmūr**capiāmīni**capiāntūr*

ACTIVE

IMPERFECT

PASSIVE

*Singular**Plural**Singular**Plural*

caperem

caperēmus

caperer

caperēmur

caperēs

caperētis

caperēris, re

caperēmini

caperet

caperent

caperētur

caperentur

PERFECT

cēperim

cēperimus

captus sim

captū sīmus

cēperis

cēperitis

(a, um) sīs

(ae, a) sītis

cēperit

cēperint

sit

sint

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem

cēpissēmus

captus essem

captū essēmus

cēpissēs

cēpissētis

(a, um) essēs

(ae, a) essētis

cēpisset

cēpissent

esset

essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. cape, take
thou2. capite, take
ye2. capere, bethou 2. capimini, be
taken ye taken

FUTURE

2. capitō, thou
shalt take2. capitōte, ye
shall take2. capitor, thou 2. —
shalt be taken3. capitō, he
shall take3. capiuntō, they
shall take3. capitor, he they shall be
taken taken

INFINITIVE

capere, to take

PRESENT capi, to be taken

captūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to take

FUTURE captum īrī, to be about to be
taken

cēpisse, to have taken

PERFECT captus (a, um) esse, to have
been taken

PARTICIPLES

capiēns, ientis, taking

PRESENT

—

captūrus, a, um, about to take

FUTURE

GER. capiendus, a, um, to
be taken

—

PERFECT

captus, a, um, having been
taken, taken

GERUND

GEN. capiendi, of taking

ACC. capiendum, taking

DAT. capiendō, for taking

ABL. capiendō, by taking

SUPINE

captum

captū

IRREGULAR VERBS

521. PRIN. PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be

INDICATIVE

Singular	PRESENT	Plural
sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>	
es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>	
est (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>	

IMPERFECT

eram, <i>I was</i>	erāmus, <i>we were</i>
erās, <i>you were</i>	erātis, <i>you were</i>
erat, <i>he was</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>

FUTURE

erō, <i>I shall be</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
eris, <i>you will be</i>	eritis, <i>you will be</i>
erit, <i>he will be</i>	erunt, <i>they will be</i>

PERFECT

fuī, <i>I have been, was</i>	fuimus, <i>we have been, were</i>
fuiſtī, <i>you have been, were</i>	fuiſtis, <i>you have been, were</i>
fuit, <i>he has been, was</i>	fūērunt } <i>they have been, were</i> fūēre }

PLUPERFECT

fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>
fuerās, <i>you had been</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>
fuerat, <i>he had been</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>
fueris, <i>you will have been</i>	fueritis, <i>you will have been</i>
fuerit, <i>he will have been</i>	fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fuerim	fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT		FUTURE	
es, be thou		estō, thou shalt be	
este, be ye		estō, he shall be	
		estōte, ye shall be	
		suntō, they shall be	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
PRES.	esse, to be	—	—
PERF.	fuisse, to have been	—	—
FUT.	futūrus esse (fore), to be about to be	futūrus, about to be	

522. PRIN. PARTS : possum, posse, potui, am able, can

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I am able, can</i>			
possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF. <i>I was able, could</i>			
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. <i>I shall be able</i>			
poterō	poterimus		

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
-------	----------	----------	------------

PLUP. *I had been able*

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
----------	------------	-----------	-------------

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō	potuerimus
---------	------------

INFINITIVE

PRES. *posse, to be able* **PERF.** *potuisse, to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. *potēns* (used as adjective), *powerful*

523.

PRIN. PARTS: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, benefit*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

PRES. *I benefit*

prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsimus
--------	----------	--------	----------

prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
--------	-----------	--------	----------

prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
---------	---------	--------	---------

IMPF. *prōderam* *prōderāmus* *prōdessem* *prōdēssēmus*

FUT. *prōderō* *prōderimus*

PERF. *prōfui* *prōfuimus* *prōfuerim* *prōfuerimus*

PLUP. *prōfueram* *prōfuerāmus* *prōfuissem* *prōfuissēmus*

F. P. *prōfuerō* *prōfuerimus*

IMPERATIVE

PRES. *prōdes, prōdeste* **FUT.** *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

INFINITIVE

PRES. *prōdesse*

PERF. *prōfuisse*

FUT. *prōfutūrus esse*

PARTICIPLE

FUT. *prōfutūrus*

524. PRIN. PARTS :

Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllēt	māllēt
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllēnt	māllēnt
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī nōlīte	—
FUT.	—	[nōlītō, etc.]	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

525. PRIN. PARTS: *eō, ire, iī, itum, go*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
PRES.	eō īs it	īmus ītis eunt	eam	ī	īte
IMPF.	ībam, ībās, ībat, etc.		īrem	{ ītō ītō	ītōte euntō
FUT.	ībō, ībis, ībit, etc.		—		
PERF.	iī, īstī, īt, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

INFINITIVE

PRES.	īre	•	PARTICIPLES
PERF.	īsse		iēns, euntis
FUT.	ītūrus esse		ītum ītūrus

GERUND

GEN.	eundī	SUPINE
DAT.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	ītum
ABL.	eundō	—

526.

PRIN. PARTS: **fīō, fieri, factus sum, be made, become, happen**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
	Singular	Plural			Singular	Plural
PRES.	fīō	—	fīam		fī	fīte
	fīs	—				
	fīt	fīunt				
IMPF.	fīēbam		fīerem			
FUT.	fīam, fīēs, etc.		—			
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim			
PLUP.	factus eram		factus essem			
F. P.	factus erō					
	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES			
PRES.	fieri		GER.	faciendus		
PERF.	factus esse		PERF.	factus		
FUT.	factum īrī					

527. PRIN. PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulli, lātus, bear, carry**

	ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
	Singular	Plural			Singular	Plural
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror		ferimur	
	fers	fertis		ferris, re	feriminī	
	fert	ferunt		fertur	feruntur	
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE			
	Singular		PASSIVE			
IMPF.	ferēbam		Singular			
FUT.	feram, ēs, etc.		ferēbar			
PERF.	tuli		ferar, ēris, etc.			
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus sum			
F. P.	tulerō		lātus eram			
			lātus erō			

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram		ferar
IMPF.	ferrem		ferrer
PERF.	tulerim		lātus sim
PLUP.	tulisseм		lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum īri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	—
FUT.	lātūrus	GER. ferendus
	—	PERF. lātus

GERUND

GEN.	ferendī
DAT.	ferendō
Acc.	ferendum
ABL.	ferēndō

SUPINE

—
—
lātum
lātū

PRIN. PARTS: *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge, entreat*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potiris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmī	verēmī	sequimī	potimī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
hortatū	veritū	secūtiū	potitū

529. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

- PRES. amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*
 IMPF. amātūrus eram, *I was about to love*
 FUT. amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love*
 PERF. amātūrus fui, *I have been or was about to love*
 PLUP. amātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love*
 F. P. amātūrus fuerō, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. amātūrus sim
 IMPF. amātūrus essem
 PERF. amātūrus fuerim
 PLUP. amātūrus fuisse

INFINITIVE

- PRES. amātūrus esse
 PERF. amātūrus fuisse

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. monitūrus sum, *I am about to advise*
 ductūrus sum, *I am about to lead*
 captūrus sum, *I am about to take*
 auditūrus sum, *I am about to hear, etc.*

530. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

- PRES. amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*
 IMPF. amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 FUT. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*

INDICATIVE—*Continued*

- PERF. amandus fui, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
PLUP. amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*
F. P. amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. amandus sim
IMPF. amandus essem
PERF. amandus fuerim
PLUP. amandus fuisse

INFINITIVE

- PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved*
PERF. amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc.*

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus*. [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in*; but with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the locative. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

After comparatives with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The measure of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case. — Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement. — A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers, a predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive. — Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually sub-

junctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam*; wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i>	. . . . .	ablative.	<i>loc.</i>	. . . . .	locative.
<i>acc.</i>	. . . . .	accusative.	<i>m.</i>	. . . . .	masculine.
<i>adj.</i>	. . . . .	adjective.	<i>n., neut.</i>	. . . . .	neuter.
<i>adv.</i>	. . . . .	adverb.	<i>neg.</i>	. . . . .	negative.
<i>comp.</i>	. . . . .	comparative.	<i>nom.</i>	. . . . .	nominative.
<i>conj.</i>	. . . . .	conjunction.	<i>num.</i>	. . . . .	numeral.
<i>dat.</i>	. . . . .	dative.	<i>part.</i>	. . . . .	participle.
<i>def.</i>	. . . . .	defective.	<i>pass.</i>	. . . . .	passive.
<i>der.</i>	. . . . .	demonstrative.	<i>perf.</i>	. . . . .	perfect.
<i>dep.</i>	. . . . .	deponent.	<i>pl., plur.</i>	. . . . .	plural.
<i>determ.</i>	. . . . .	determinative.	<i>pr.</i>	. . . . .	proper.
<i>dim.</i>	. . . . .	diminutive.	<i>prep.</i>	. . . . .	preposition.
<i>f.</i>	. . . . .	feminine.	<i>pres.</i>	. . . . .	present.
<i>fut.</i>	. . . . .	future.	<i>pron.</i>	. . . . .	pronoun.
<i>gen.</i>	. . . . .	genitive.	<i>refl.</i>	. . . . .	reflexive.
<i>impers.</i>	. . . . .	impersonal.	<i>rel.</i>	. . . . .	relative.
<i>indecl.</i>	. . . . .	indeclinable.	<i>sing.</i>	. . . . .	singular.
<i>indef.</i>	. . . . .	indefinite.	<i>subjv.</i>	. . . . .	subjunctive.
<i>interrog.</i>	. . . . .	interrogative.	<i>subst.</i>	. . . . .	substantive.
<i>intr.</i>	. . . . .	intransitive.	<i>sup.</i>	. . . . .	superlative.
<i>irr.</i>	. . . . .	irregular.	<i>tr.</i>	. . . . .	transitive.

VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

ā, ab, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> , from, by, with, at, on, in.	acclivitās, ātis (<i>acclivis</i>), <i>f.</i> , ascent, slope.
abditus. <i>See abdō.</i>	accurrō, ere, <i>accurrī</i> , <i>accursum</i> (<i>ad + currō</i> , run), <i>intr.</i> , run up, hasten to.
abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus (<i>ab + dō</i> , place), <i>tr.</i> , put away, conceal.	accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>ad + causa</i>), <i>tr.</i> , accuse, reproach.
abiciō, ere, abiēcī, abiectus, <i>tr.</i> , throw, hurl.	ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
ablātus. <i>See auferō.</i>	ācerimē. <i>See ācriter.</i>
absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, <i>intr.</i> , be away, be distant, be absent.	aciēs, aciēi, <i>f.</i> , edge; line of battle.
ac. <i>See atque.</i>	ācriter (<i>ācer</i>), <i>adv.</i> , sharply, eagerly, fiercely; <i>comp. ācrius</i> ; <i>sup. ācerimē.</i>
Acca, ae, <i>f.</i> , <i>pr. name</i> , Acca Larentia, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.	āctus. <i>See agō.</i>
accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus (<i>ad + cēdō</i>), <i>intr.</i> , go near, come near, approach; <i>w. ad and acc.</i>	ad, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , to, toward, at, near, against; according to; <i>w. numerals</i> , about.
accendō, ere, accendī, accēnsus (<i>ad + candēō</i> , glow), <i>tr.</i> , set on fire; accēnsus, burning.	addō, addere, addidī, additus (<i>ad + dō</i> , place), <i>tr.</i> , add.
accidō, ere, accidi, — (<i>ad + cadō</i>), <i>intr.</i> , happen.	addūcō, ere, addūxi, adductus (<i>ad + dūcō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , lead to, lead, influence.
acciō, īre, accīvī, accītus (<i>ad + cieō</i> , set in motion), <i>tr.</i> , summon, invite.	adeō, adire, adiī, aditum (<i>ad + eō</i>), <i>intr.</i> , go to, approach.
acciipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptus (<i>ad + capiō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , receive; suffer, undergo.	adficō, ere, adficī, adfectus (<i>ad + faciō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , affect; poenā —, punish.
acclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>ad + clāmō</i> , cry), <i>tr.</i> , shout, cry out.	adhibeō, īre, adhibui, adhibitus (<i>ad + habeō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , call in, use.
acclivis, ē (<i>ad + clivus</i> , slope), rising.	aditus, ūs (<i>adeō</i>), <i>m.</i> , approach, access.

- administrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + ministrō, manage), *tr.*, manage, direct, administer.
- adolēscō, ere, adulēvī, adultus (ad + olēscō, grow), *intr.*, grow up.
- adorior, īrī, adortus sum (ad + orior), *intr.*, attack.
- adōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ad + örnō, equip), *tr.*, equip, adorn.
- adsum, adesse, adfūi, adfutūrus (ad + sum), *intr.*, be present, aid.
- Aduatūci, īrum, *m.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- adulēscēns, entis (adolēscō), young; *as subst.*, young man, youth.
- adveniō, īre, advēnī, adventum (ad + veniō), *intr.*, come to, arrive, reach.
- adventus, ūs (adveniō), *m.*, arrival, approach.
- adversus, a, um (advertō, turn to), in front, opposite; adversō colle, up the hill.
- adversus (adversus), *prep. w. acc.*, opposite, against, facing.
- aedificium, ī (aedificō), *n.*, building.
- aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus (aedis + faciō), *tr.*, build, construct.
- aedis or aedēs, is, *f.*, temple; *pl.*, aedēs rēgiae, palace.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.
- aegrē (aeger), *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
- aegritūdō, inis (aeger), *f.*, sickness, vexation, mortification.
- aequāliter (aequālis, equal), *adv.*, uniformly, equally.
- aequus, a, um, equal, favorable.
- aestās, ītis, *f.*, summer.
- aetās, ītis, *f.*, age.
- ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, territory.
- agger, aggeris (ad + gerō), *m.*, mound, agger.
- aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum (ad + gradior, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
- agmen, agminis (agō), *n.*, army on the march; prīnum agmen, van; novissimum agmen, rear.
- āgnōscō, ere, āgnōvī, āgnitus (ad + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize.
- agō, ere, īgī, īctus, *tr.*, drive, lead, move forward, do, treat; triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph.
- agricola, ae (ager + colō), *m.*, farmer.
- aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, *def.*, say.
- Alba or Alba Longa, ae, *f.*, an ancient Latin town.
- Albānus, a, um (Alba), Alban; *as subst.*, Albānus, ī, *m.*, an Alban.
- albus, a, um, white.
- aliēnus, a, um (alias), another's, unfavorable, strange.
- aliquis and aliquī, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, *indef. pron.*, some one, any one.
- alius, alia, aliud, other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . some, some . . . others; alii aliam in partem, some in one direction, some in another.
- Allobrogēs, um, *m.*, a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
- alō, ere, aluī, altus, *tr.*, nourish, strengthen.
- altāria, ium, *n. pl.*, altar.
- alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*), another, second.
- altitūdō, inis (altus), *f.*, height, depth.
- altus, a, um (alō), high, deep.
- alveus, ī, *m.*, basket, trough.

- Ambiānī**, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, a Belgic tribe.
amīctia, *ae* (*amicus*), *f.*, friendship, alliance.
amicus, *i* (*amō*), *m.*, friend, ally.
āmittō, *ere*, **āmisi**. **āmissus** (*ā* + *mittō*), *tr.*, lose.
amō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *tr.*, love, like.
āmoveō, *ēre*, *āmōvī*, *āmōtus* (*ā* + *moveō*), *tr.*, take away, remove.
amplificō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*amplus* + *faciō*), *tr.*, increase, extend.
amplus, *a*, *um*, large, extensive, ample.
Amilius, *i*, *m.*, king of Alba Longa.
ancile, *is*, *n.*, a small oval shield.
angustiae, *ārum* (*angustus*), *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow pass. [steep.
angustus, *a*, *um*, narrow, contracted;
animadvertisō, *ere*, **animadverti**, *animadversus* (*animū* + *advertisō*, turn toward), *tr.*, turn one's mind to, notice; **animadvertere** in, punish.
animal, *ālis* (*anima*, life), *n.*, animal.
animus, *i*, *m.*, mind, disposition, courage, spirit; *in animō esse*, *in animō habēre*, have in mind, intend.
annus, *i*, *m.*, year.
ante, *adv.* and *prep. w. acc.*, before.
antepōnō, *ere*, **anteposui**, **antepositus** (*ante* + *pōnō*), *tr.*, put before.
antequam, *conj.*, before, until.
antiquitus (*antiquus*), *adv.*, in former times, anciently.
antiquus, *a*, *um*, old, ancient.
ānulus, *i*, *m.*, ring.
anxius, *a*, *um* (*angō*, vex), troubled, anxious.
aperiō, *ire*, **aperui**, **apertus**, *tr.*, open.
apertus, *a*, *um* (*aperiō*), open.
appellō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *tr.*, call, name.
Appius, *i*, *m.*, a Roman surname.
- apprehendō**, *ere*, **apprehendi**, **apprehensus** (*ad* + *prehendō*, seize), *tr.*, lay hold of, seize.
appropinquō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum* (*ad* + *propinquus*), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, approach, come near.
apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, in the presence of, near.
aqua, *ae*, *f.*, water. [Gaul.
Aquilēia, *ae*, *f.*, a town of Cisalpine aquilō, *ōnis*, *m.*, the north wind.
Aquitānia, *ae*, *f.*, a division of southern Gaul.
Aquitānus, *i*, *m.*, an Aquitanian.
āra, *ae*, *f.*, altar.
Arar, **Araris**, *m.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.
arbiter, *arbitri*, *m.*, witness.
arbitror, *ārī*, *ātus sum* (*arbiter*), *intr.*, think, consider, suppose.
arceō, *ēre*, **arcui**, —, *tr.*, shut up, hinder, prevent.
Arivistus, *i*, *m.*, a German king.
arma, *ōrum*, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.
armilla, *ae*, *f.*, bracelet.
armō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*arma*), *tr.*, arm, equip.
arō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *tr.*, plow.
ars, *artis*, *f.*, art.
artūs, *artuum*, *m. pl.*, joints.
arx, *arcis* (*arceō*), *f.*, stronghold, citadel.
asper, **aspera**, **asperum**, rough, fierce.
āstūtia, *ae* (*āstūtus*, cunning), *f.*, shrewdness, cunning.
asylum, *i*, *n.*, asylum, place of refuge.
at, *conj.*, but, yet.
Athēnae, *ārum*, *f.*, Athens.
atque, *ac*, *conj.*, and.
Atrebās, *ātis*, *m.*, one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

attingō, ere, attigī, attāctus (*ad* + tangō, touch), *tr.*, touch, join, border on. [astounded.]

attonitus, *a.*, um, thunderstruck, auctōritās, ātis (*augeō*), *f.*, authority, influence, reputation.

audācter (*audāx*), *adv.*, boldly, courageously; *comp.* audācius; *sup.* audācissimē.

audāx, *adj.*, bold.

Audecumborius, *i.*, *m.*, an ambassador of the Remi.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *intr.*, dare.

audiō, īre, audīvi, audītus, *tr.*, hear. auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (*ab* + ferō), *tr.*, take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *tr.*, increase.

augurium, *i.* (*augur*, soothsayer), *n.*, divination, augury.

aureus, *a.*, um (*aurum*, gold), golden.

auspiciūm, *i.* (*avis* + speciō, look), *n.*, divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. See audeō.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, however.

auxiliū, *i.*, *n.*, help, aid.

Aventinus, *a.*, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

āvertō, ere, āverti, āversus (*ab* + vertō), *tr.*, turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

*avus, *i.*, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, *e.*, Balearic.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, *a.*, um (*bellum*), warlike.

Bellovacī, īrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

bellum, *i.*, *n.*, war; bellum īferre, make war; bellum gerere, wage war.

bene (*bonus*), *adv.*, well; *comp.* melius, *sup.* optimē.

beneficiūm, *i.* (*bene* + faciō), *n.*, favor, service.

benignē (*benignus*, kind), *adv.*, kindly. bibō, ere, bibī, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *i.*, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōii, īrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetiī.

bonus, *a.*, um, good.

Bratuspantium, *i.*, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, *e.*, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (*brevis*), *f.*, shortness.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *tr.*, fall, die, perish.

caedēs, is (*caedō*), *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, *i.*, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 100-44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

campus, *i.*, *m.*, plain.

capiō, ere, cépi, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, *i.*, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captivus, *i.* (*capiō*), *m.*, captive.

caput, capitīs, *n.*, head.

cārē (cārus), *adv.*, dearly.

careō, ēre, carū, caritūrus, *intr. w. abl.*, be without, be in need of, lack.

carpentum, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> , two-wheeled carriage.	cēterī, <i>ae, a.</i> , <i>pl.</i> , the rest, the others.
carrus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , wagon, cart.	cibus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , food.
Carthāgō, <i>inis, f.</i> , a great Phoenician city on the northern coast of Africa.	Cimbri, <i>ōrum, m.</i> , a Germanic tribe.
cārus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> , dear.	circā, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , around, about.
casa, <i>ae, f.</i> , hut.	circiter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , about, nearly.
Cassius, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , a Roman name.	circum, <i>adv. and prep. w. acc.</i> , about, around.
castellum, <i>i</i> (<i>dim. of castrum</i>), <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt.	circumdō, circumdare, circumdedi, circumdatus (<i>circum + dō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , surround.
Casticus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , a Sequanian chief.	circumiciō, ere, circumiēci, circumiectus (<i>circum + iaciō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , throw about, place around.
castra, <i>ōrum, n.</i> , camp.	circumveniō, ire, circumvēni, circumventus (<i>circum + veniō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , come around, surround.
cāsus, <i>ūs</i> (<i>cadō</i>), <i>m.</i> , falling, chance, misfortune.	cis, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , on this side of.
catalus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , cub.	citerior, citerius, hither.
causa, <i>ae, f.</i> , reason, cause, case; quā dē causā, why, for this reason;	citrā, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , on this side of.
causā, <i>w. gen.</i> , for the sake of, for, on account of; causam dicere, plead a case.	civicus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> (<i>civis</i>), civic.
cavea, <i>aē</i> (<i>cavus</i> , hollow), <i>f.</i> , cage.	civis, <i>is, m. and f.</i> , citizen. [state.
cecidi. See <i>cadō</i> .	civitās, ātis (<i>civis</i>), <i>f.</i> , citizenship,
cēdō, ere, cessi, cessum, <i>intr.</i> , go, yield, retire, retreat.	clādēs, <i>is, f.</i> , disaster, destruction.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.	clāmitō, āre, āvi, ātus (<i>clāmō</i> , cry out), <i>tr.</i> , cry out, shout.
celeritās, ātis (<i>celer</i>), <i>f.</i> , speed, quickness.	clāmor, <i>ōris</i> (<i>clāmō</i> , cry out), <i>m.</i> , shouting, cry.
celeriter (<i>celer</i>), <i>adv.</i> , quickly, swiftly; comp. <i>celerius</i> ; sup. <i>celerrimē</i> .	classis, <i>is, f.</i> , fleet.
Celtae, ārum, <i>m.</i> , Celts, one of the three great peoples of Gaul.	Claudia, <i>ae, f.</i> , sister of Appius Claudius Pulcher.
cēna, <i>ae, f.</i> , meal, dinner.	Claudius, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , a Roman family name; Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.
centum, <i>indecl.</i> , hundred.	claudō, ere, clausi, clausus, <i>tr.</i> , shut, close.
centuria, <i>ae</i> (<i>centum</i>), <i>f.</i> , a division of the people, or army, containing one hundred ; century.	clēmentia, <i>ae</i> (<i>clēmēns</i> , mild), <i>f.</i> , kindness, mildness.
centuriō, <i>ōnis</i> (<i>centuria</i>), <i>m.</i> , centurion, commander of a century.	cliēns, clientis, <i>m. and f.</i> , dependent, vassal.
certāmen, <i>inis</i> (<i>certō</i> , contend), <i>n.</i> , contest.	coepi, coepisse, coeptūrus sum, <i>def.</i> , began.
certus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> (<i>cernō</i> , perceive), certain, appointed; certiōrem facere, inform.	

cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus (con + [g]nōscō, know), <i>tr.</i> , rec- ognize, learn, discover, ascertain.	concidō, ere, concidī, — (con + cadō), <i>intr.</i> , fall, be killed.
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus (con + agō), drive together, collect, force, com- pel.	concidō, ere, concidī, concisus (con + caedō, slay), <i>tr.</i> , cut down, kill.
cohors, cohortis, <i>f.</i> , cohort (the tenth part of a legion).	conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>tr.</i> , gain, win, procure.
cohortor, āri, ātus sum (con + hortor), <i>tr.</i> , exhort, encourage.	concilium, ī, <i>n.</i> , assembly, council.
collis, is, <i>m.</i> , hill.	condemnō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + damnō), <i>tr.</i> , condemn.
colō, ere, colui, cultus, <i>tr.</i> , cultivate, worship.	condiciō, īnis (condicō, agree), <i>f.</i> , agreement, proposal, terms.
commeātus, ūs, <i>m.</i> , provisions, sup- plies.	condō, ere, condidī, conditus (con + dō, put), <i>tr.</i> , found, establish.
comminus (con + manus), <i>adv.</i> , hand to hand.	condūcō, ere, condūxi, conductus (con + dūcō), <i>tr.</i> , bring together, hire.
committō, ere, commisi, commissus (con + mittō), <i>tr.</i> , commit, intrust ; join, begin (battle).	cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus (con + ferō), <i>tr.</i> , bring together, gather; sē cōferre, betake one's self, go.
commodē (commodus, useful), <i>adv.</i> , advantageously, easily.	cōfertus, a, um (cōferciō, crowd), crowded, dense.
commoveō, ēre, commōvī, commōtus (con + moveō), <i>tr.</i> , to move, in- fluence, disturb.	cōficiō, ere, cōficiī, cōfectus (con + faciō), <i>tr.</i> , accomplish, fin- ish, complete, furnish, wear out.
compār, comparis (con + pār), fit- ting, suitable.	cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + firmō, strengthen), <i>tr.</i> , strengthen, establish, assure, declare, encourage.
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + parō), <i>tr.</i> , prepare, provide.	cōfigō, ere, cōflixi, cōflictum, <i>intr.</i> , contend, fight.
compleō, complēre, complēvī, com- plētus (con + pleō, fill), <i>tr.</i> , fill up, complete.	cōfugiō, ere, cōfugiī, —, <i>intr.</i> , flee.
complūrēs, a, many, very many, a great many.	congressus, ūs (congregō, meet), <i>m.</i> , meeting.
comprehendō, ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus (con + prehendō, seize), <i>tr.</i> , seize, arrest.	congruō, ere, congrui, —, <i>intr.</i> , agree, tally.
con. See cum.	coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus (con + iaciō), <i>tr.</i> , throw, hurl.
concedō, ere, concessī, concessum (con + cēdō), <i>intr.</i> , yield, grant, allow, permit.	coniungō, ere, coniūnxī, coniunctus (con + iungō), <i>tr.</i> , join.
	coniūnx, coniugis (coniungō), <i>f.</i> , wife.

- coniūrātiō, ūnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.
- coniūrātus, ī (coniūrō), *m.*, conspirator.
- coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.
- conlātūs. *See cōnferō.*
- conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + locō, place), *tr.*, place, put, station.
- conloquium, ī (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.
- conloquor, conloqui, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer.
- cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, attempt, try.
- cōnsanguineus, ī (con + sanguis, blood), *m.*, relative, kinsman.
- cōnscribō, ere, cōnscripsi, cōnscrip-tus (con + scribō), *tr.*, levy, enroll.
- cōnsecrō, āre, avī, ātus (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate.
- cōnsentiō, īre, cōnsensi, cōnsēnsum (con + sentiō, feel), *intr.*, agree, conspire.
- cōnsequor, cōnsequi, cōnsecūtus sum (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.
- cōnserō, ere, cōnserui, cōnser-tus (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).
- cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve.
- cōnsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, consider, examine, look at closely.
- cōnsidō, ere, cōnsēdī, cōn sessum (con + sidō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.
- cōnsilium, ī (cōnsulō), *n.*, plan, advice, prudence.
- cōnsimilis, e (con + similis), very like.
- cōnsistō, ere, cōnstiti, — (con + sistō, place), *intr.*, take a stand, hold a position, stop.
- cōspectus, ūs (cōspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.
- cōspiciō, ere, cōspēxi, cōspectus (con + speciō, look), *tr.*, see, perceive.
- cōnstantia, ae (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.
- cōnstituō, ere, cōnstitui, cōnstitūtus (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.
- cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvi, cōsuētus (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.
- cōnsuētūdō, inis (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.
- cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*, consul.
- cōnsulō, ere, cōnsului, cōnsultus, *tr.*, ask advice, consult.
- contendō, ere, contendī, contentum (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.
- contentiō, ūnis (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.
- continenter (contineō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.
- contineō, īre, continui, contentus (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, hem in, keep.
- cōntiō, ūnis (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.
- contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, opposite.
- contulī. *See cōnferō.*
- cōnūbium, ī (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.
- conveniō, īre, convēni, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers.* convenit, it is fit, agreed.

convertō, ere, convertī, conversus (*con + vertō*), *tr.*, turn (about), change; *signa convertere*, face about.
convocō, āre, āvi, ātus (*con + vocō*), *tr.*, call together, summon.
coorior, īrī, coortus sum (*con + orior*), *intr.*, rise, break out.
cōpia, ae, f., supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.
Corinthus, ī, *f.*, Corinth.
Cornēlius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman family. *See Cossus.*
cornū, ūs, n., horn, flank, wing.
corōna, ae, f., crown.
corpus, corporis, n., body.
corrūō, ere, corrui, — (*con + ruō, fall*), *intr.*, fall, be slain.
Cossus, ī, *m.*, *Aulus Cornēlius Cossus*, consul 343 B.C.
cottidiānus, a, um (*cottidiē*), daily.
cottidiē, adv., daily.
crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *tr. and intr.*, *w. dat.*, believe, trust.
cremō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, burn.
creō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, appoint, choose.
Crētēs, Crētum, *m. pl.*, Cretans.
crux, crucis, f., cross, gallows.
culpō, āre, āvi, ātus (*culpa*, fault), *tr.*, blame.
cultus, *see colō*.
cum, prep. w. abl., with; *in composition*, *con-*, *co-*; *conj.*, when, since, although, because.
cupidōs, a, um (*cupiō*), desirous, eager.
cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupii, cupitus, *tr.*, wish, desire, be eager for.
cūr, adv., why.
cūra, ae, f., care.
Curēs, Curium, f. pl., a Sabine town.
cūria, ae, f., senate

cursus, ūs (*currō, run*), *m.*, course.
curūlis, e (*currus*, chariot), curule.
cūstōdia, ae (*cūstōs*, guard), *f.*, guard.
cūstōdiō, īre, cūstōdivī, cūstōdītus (*cūstōs*, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ūnis (*damnō*), *f.*, condemnation.
damnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, condemn, sentence.
dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.
dea, ae, f., goddess.
dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus (*dē + habeō*), *tr.*, owe; *with inf.*, ought.
decem, indecl., ten.
dēcernō, ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus (*dē + cernō*, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.
dēcertō, āre, āvi, ātum (*dē + certō*, contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.
Decius, ī, m., *Pūblius Decius Mūs*, consul 340 B.C.
dēclivis, e (*dē + clivus*, slope), sloping.
dēcrēvī. *See dēcernō*.
dēcurrō, ere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum (*dē + currō*, run), *intr.*, run down, hasten down.
dēditiō, ūnis (*dēdō*), *f.*, surrender.
dēdō, dēdere, dēdīdī, dēditus (*dē + dō*), *tr.*, give up, surrender.
dēfendō, ere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, *tr.*, defend, protect.
dēfēnsor, ūris (*dēfendō*), *m.*, defender.
dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus (*dē + ferō*), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.
dēficiō, ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus (*dē + faciō*), *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking, revolt. [thereafter].
deinceps, adv., successively, next,

deinde (<i>dē + inde</i>), <i>adv.</i> , afterwards, next.	diēs, ēi, m. and f. , day.
dēlābor, dēlābī, dēlāpsus sum (<i>dē +</i> <i>lābor</i> , slip), <i>intr.</i> , glide or fall down.	difficilis, e (<i>dis + facilis</i>), difficult, hard.
dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. , please, delight.	difficultās, ātis (<i>difficilis</i>), <i>f.</i> , diffi- culty.
dēlīgō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus (<i>dē +</i> <i>legō</i> , collect), <i>tr.</i> , select, choose.	diligenter (<i>diligō</i> , esteem). <i>adv.</i> , carefully, attentively.
Delphī, ūrum, m. , Delphi.	diligentia, ae (<i>diligō</i> , esteem), <i>f.</i> , carefulness, diligence, industry.
dēmittō, ere, dēmisi, dēmissus (<i>dē +</i> <i>mittō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , send down, let down ; sē dēmittere, jump.	dimētior, īrī, dimēnsus sum, tr. , measure.
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>dē + mōns-</i> <i>trō</i> , show), <i>tr.</i> , point out, show, mention.	dimicō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr. , fight, contend.
dēnique, adv. , at last, finally.	dimittō, ere, dīmisi, dīmissus (<i>dis +</i> <i>mittō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , send off, dismiss, let go.
dēpōnō, ere, dēposui, dēpositus (<i>dē</i> + <i>pōnō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , lay down, give up.	diripiō, ere, diripui, direptus (<i>dis +</i> <i>rapiō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , lay waste, pillage, ravage.
dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum (<i>dē +</i> <i>populor</i>), <i>tr.</i> , lay waste, ravage.	dis-, dī-, inseparable neg. prefix , apart, not, un-.
dēprecātor, ūris (<i>dēprecōr</i> , mediate), <i>m.</i> , intercessor ; eō <i>dēprecātōre</i> , through his mediation.	discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum (<i>dis</i> + <i>cēdō</i>), <i>intr.</i> , depart, withdraw, leave.
dēscendō, ere, dēscendi, dēscēnsūm (<i>dē + scandō</i> , climb), <i>intr.</i> , descend.	discipulus, ī (<i>discō</i>), <i>m.</i> , pupil.
dēscribō, ere, dēscriptī, dēscriptus (<i>dē + scribō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , describe.	discō, ere, didicī, —, tr. , learn.
dēsistō, ere, dēstītī, — (<i>dē + sistō</i> , stand), <i>intr.</i> , cease, leave off.	discurrō, ere, dis(cu)currī, discursum (<i>dis + currō</i> , run), <i>intr.</i> , run in dif- ferent directions.
dēsum, deesse, dēfūi, dēfutūrus (<i>dē</i> + <i>sum</i>), <i>intr.</i> , be lacking, fail.	dissimilis, e (<i>dis + similis</i>), unlike, dissimilar.
deus, ī, m. , god.	dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>dissimilis</i>), <i>tr.</i> , conceal, disguise.
dēvincō, ere, dēvīcī, dēvictus (<i>dē +</i> <i>vincō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , subdue, conquer.	distineō, ēre, distinūi, distentus (<i>dis + teneō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , keep apart.
dēvoveō, ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus (<i>dē +</i> <i>voveō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , vow, devote.	distribuō, ere, distribui, distribūtus (<i>dis + tribuō</i> , assign), <i>tr.</i> , distribute, divide.
dexter, dextra, dextrum , right ; <i>dex-</i> <i>tra, ae, f.</i> , right hand.	diū, adv. , long, for a long time ; <i>comp.</i> <i>diūtius, sup. diūtiissimē</i> .
di- . See <i>dis-</i> .	Dīvīciācus, ī, m. , a chief of the Haedui.
dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus, tr. , say, tell, speak ; impose (a fine) ; plead.	dīvidō, ere, dīvisī, dīvisus, tr. , divide, separate.

dō, dare, dēdī, datus, *tr.*, give; poenās dare, suffer punishment.

doceō, ēre, docui, doctus, *tr.*, teach, inform. [by trickery.] dolōsē (dolus, trick), *adv.*, craftily, domesticus, a, um (domus), domestic; from their own country.

dominus, ī, *m.*, master, lord.

domus, ūs or ī, *f.*, house, home; domī, at home; domum, (to) home, homeward.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus (dōnum), *tr.*, present, give.

dōnum, ī (dō), *n.*, gift.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

ducenti, ae, a (duo + centum), two hundred. [bring.]

dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *tr.*, lead,

Duilius, ī, *m.*, Gaius Duilius, a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.

dum, *conj.*, while, until.

Dumnorix, īgis, *m.*, brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.

duodēvīginti, *indecl.*, eighteen.

dux, ducis (dūcō), *m.*, guide, leader, general.

E

ē. See ex.

ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus (ex + dō), *tr.*, give out, give birth to, bear.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, *tr.*, eat.

ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxi, ēductus (ex + dūcō), *tr.*, lead out, lead.

efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus (ex + ferō), *tr.*, carry out.

effugiō, ere, effūgi, — (ex + fugiō), *tr. and intr.*, escape.

effundō, ere, effūdi, effūsus (ex + fundō, pour), *tr.*, pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Egeria, ae, *f.*, a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgi. See agō.

ego, mei, *pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *intr.*, go out, come forth.

eius. See is.

ēliciō, ere, ēlicui, ēlicitus (ex + laciō, allure), *tr.*, lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), *tr.*, select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (ex + migrō, migrate), *intr.*, emigrate, remove.

enim, *conj.*, for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūntiō), *tr.*, announce, reveal.

ēō, īre, īi, itum, *intr.*, go.

ēō (is), *adv.*, there, to that place, thither.

eques, equitis (equus), *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalrymen.

equester, equestris, equestre (eques), of the cavalry, equestrian.

equitātus, ūs (eques), *m.*, cavalry.

equus, ī, *m.*, horse.

ēripiō, ere, ēripui, ēreptus (ex + rapiō), *tr.*, snatch away, save.

ērō, eris, etc. See sum.

ēruptiō, ūnis (ērumpō, break forth), *f.*, breaking out, sally.

ēsse. See sum.

ēsse. See edō.

et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam (et + iam), *conj.*, besides, still, Eurōpa, ae, *f.*, Europe. [even.]

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum (ex + vādō, go), *intr.*, go out, escape.

ex or ē, prep. w. abl. , out of, from, of ;	fabricō, āre, āvī, ātus (faber), <i>tr.</i> , make, construct, build.
ūnā ex parte, on one side ; ex itinere, on the march.	fābula, ae (for, speak), <i>f.</i> , story.
excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + cōgitō, think), <i>tr.</i> , think out, contrive.	fācile (facilis), <i>adv.</i> , easily ; <i>comp.</i> facilius, <i>sup.</i> facillimē.
exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus (ex + eō), <i>intr.</i> , go out, depart, leave.	fācilis, e (faciō), easy.
exercitō, āre, āvī, ātus (exerceō, train), <i>tr.</i> , exercise, train.	faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, <i>tr.</i> , make, do, form, build ; verba facere, speak ; proelium facere, fight a battle.
exercitus, ūs (exerceō, train), <i>m.</i> , army.	fāctum, ī (faciō), <i>n.</i> , deed.
existimō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + aēstimō, consider), <i>tr.</i> , think, suppose, believe.	fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus, <i>tr.</i> , deceive ; spem sē fefellisse, that they were disappointed in their hope.
expeditus, a, um (expediō, free), unincumbered, without baggage.	familia, ae (famulus, slave), <i>f.</i> , household, vassals.
expellō, ere, expuli, expulsus (ex + pellō) <i>tr.</i> , drive out, expel.	fāstus, a, um (fās, right), legal, court—.
explōrātor, ūris (explōrō), <i>m.</i> , scout.	Faustulus, ī, <i>m.</i> , the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>tr.</i> , search, ascertain, reconnoiter.	fefelli. See fallō.
expōnō, ere, exposui, expositus (ex + pōnō), <i>tr.</i> , expose, abandon.	fēmina, ae, <i>f.</i> , woman.
expositiō, ūnis (expōnō), <i>f.</i> , exposure, abandonment.	ferāx, ferācis (ferō), fertile, productive.
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + pugnō), <i>tr.</i> , capture, take by storm, storm.	ferē, <i>adv.</i> , nearly, about, almost.
exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + spectō), <i>tr.</i> , look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.	ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, <i>tr.</i> , bear, carry ; lēgem ferre, propose, institute a law.
extinguō, ere, extinxī, extinctus (ex + stinguō, put out), <i>tr.</i> , extinguish, destroy, kill.	ferreus, a, um (ferrum, iron), (of) iron ; ferreae manūs, grappling-irons.
exterus, extera, exterum, outer ; comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus, last, end of.	fertilitās, ātis (fertilis, fertile), <i>f.</i> , fertility.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.	ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.
extrēmus. See exterus.	fidēs, ei (fidō, trust), <i>f.</i> , faith, confidence, trust ; in fidēm venīre, put one's self under the protection of.
<i>Excurō</i>	fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.
F	filia, ae, <i>f.</i> , daughter.
faber, fabrī, m. , mechanic, workman, artisan.	filius, ī, <i>m.</i> , son.
	finis, is, <i>m.</i> , limit, end, boundary ; pl., territory.
	finitimus, a, um (finis), adjoining, neighboring ; as subst., finitimus, ī, <i>m.</i> , neighbor.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certiō fieri**, be informed.

flāmen, flāminis, m., Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., river.

fluō, ere, flūxi, fluxus, intr., flow.

foculus, ī (dim. of focus, hearth), m.
fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, f., shape, form.

fors, fortis, f., chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effūsus**, happened to have overflowed.

fortis, e, brave.

fortiter (fortis), adv., bravely.

fortūna, ae (fors), f., fortune, good fortune.

forum, ī, n., market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), f., ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum), of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.

frūmentum, ī (fruor), n., grain.

fruor, frūi, frūctus sum, intr., w. abl., enjoy.

fuga, ae, f., flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgi,—, intr., flee, run away.

fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., thunderbolt, lightning.

fūmus, ī, m., smoke.

fūnāle, is (fūnis, cord), n., torch.

funditor, ūris (funda, sling), m., slinger. [madness.]

furor, ūris (furō, rage), m., rage,

fūrtum, ī (für, thief), n., theft.
futūrus. *See sum.*

G

G. = Gāius, ī, m., a Roman name.

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Sueiones.

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, Gallic; *as subst.*, **Gallus, ī, m.**, a Gaul.

Garumna, ae, f., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.

Gaurus, ī, m., a mountain of Campania.

geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; *as subst.*, **geminī, ūrum, m. pl.**, twins.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.

gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., tribe, nation, race.

genus, generis (gēns), n., kind, class, species.

Germānus, ī, m., German.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, tr., bear, carry, carry on, wage; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mātrem sē gessit**, bore herself or acted as a mother.

gladius, ī, m., sword.

gracilis, e, slender.

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, ī, m., Greek.

grātia, ae (grātus), f., favor, influence; kindness; **grātiā, w. gen.**, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum (grātus), tr., congratulate.

grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

gravis, e, heavy, hard.

graviter (gravis), adv., severely.

H

habeō, ēre, habui, habitus, tr., have, hold; consult (*auspicio*).

Haeduus, ī, m., Haeduan.

Hannibal, alis, m.: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247–183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

haud, adv., not.

Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; *as subst.*,

Helvētiī, örūm, m. pl., Helvetians.

hiberna, örūm (hiems), n. pl., winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; he, she, it.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum (hiems), intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

hinc (hic), *adv.*, hence; **hinc . . . hinc**, in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.

Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.

hodiē (hīc + diēs), *adv.*, to-day.

homō, hominis, m. and f., man, human being.

honor, örīs, m., honor.

hōra, ae, f., hour.

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage.

hortus, ī, m., garden.

hospes, hospitis, m. and f., guest, host.

Hostilius, ī, m., the name of a Roman family; **Hostus Hostilius**, a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostilius**, third king of Rome.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

Hostus. See *Hostilius*.

hūc (hic), *adv.*, hither, to this place.

humilis, e (humus), low.

humus, ī, f., ground; **humī**, on the ground.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr., throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iactitō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), *intr.*, boast, brag.

iam, adv., now, already, soon.

Iāniculum, ī, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuarius, ī (Iānus), m., January.

Iānus, ī, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

idem, eadem, idem (is + dem), *dem. pron. and adj.*, the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

Idūs, Iduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

ignis, is, m., fire.

ignōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ignārus, ignorant), *tr.*, not to know.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj., that; he, she, it; the former.

imāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbuī, imbūtus, tr., wet; inspire.

immineō, ēre, imminuī, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immisi, immissus (in + mittō), *tr.*, send into, let into, hurl.

impedimentum, ī (impediō), n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

impediō, ire, impedivī, impeditus (in + pēs), <i>tr.</i> , entangle, hinder, impede.	inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>tr. and intr.</i> , bend, incline, yield.
impellō, ere, impuli, impulsus (in + pellō), <i>tr.</i> , urge, impel, incite.	inclusus, a, um, famous.
impendeō, ēre, —, — (in + pendeō, hang), <i>intr.</i> , overhang.	incola, ae (incolō), <i>m. and f.</i> , inhab- itant.
imperātor, ūris (imperō), <i>m.</i> , com- mander, commander in chief, gen- eral.	incolō, ere, incolui, —, <i>tr.</i> , dwell, live.
imperātum, ī (imperō), <i>n.</i> , order, command.	incolumnis, e, unharmed, safe.
imperium, ī (imperō), <i>n.</i> , order, com- mand, power, government, rule; nova imperia, revolution.	incrēdibilis, e (in <i>neg.</i> + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.
imperō, āre, āvī, ātum (in + parō), <i>intr., w. dat.</i> , command, order, rule.	increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), <i>tr.</i> , exclaim, upbraid, taunt.
impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>tr.</i> , obtain, secure, gain.	increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, <i>tr.</i> , sound, scold, exclaim.
impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), <i>m.</i> , assault, attack, onset.	incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + causa), <i>tr.</i> , accuse, blame.
impius, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + pius, rever- ent), wicked, impious.	inde, <i>adv.</i> , thence, thereupon, then.
impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus (in + pōnō), <i>tr.</i> , place in.	index, indicis (indicō), <i>m.</i> , sign, mark.
imprōvisus, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + prō- visus, foreseen), sudden; dē im- prōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly.	indicium, ī (indicō), <i>n.</i> , information; per indicium, by informers.
īmus. <i>See inferus.</i>	indicō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + dicō, de- clare), <i>tr.</i> , announce, reveal.
in-, negative inseparable prefix, un-, not.	indicō, ere, indixī, indictus (in + dicō), <i>tr.</i> , proclaim, announce, ap- point.
in, prep. <i>w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.</i> , into, against, toward, forward; <i>w. abl.</i> , in, on, upon, over.	infēlix, infēlicia (in <i>neg.</i> + fēlix, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.
incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus (in + candeō, glow), <i>tr.</i> , set fire to, burn.	inferior. <i>See inferus.</i>
incidō, ere, incidi, — (in + cadō), <i>intr.</i> , occur.	infero, inferre, intulī, inlātus (in + ferō), <i>tr.</i> , carry in, bring in; sē inferre, betake one's self; signa inferre, charge.
incitō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + citō, move swiftlv), <i>tr.</i> , urge on, incite, encour- age, arouse, rouse.	inferus, a, um, below; comp. infe- rior, lower, inferior; sup. infimus or īmus, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
	infestō, āre, āvī, ātus (infestus), <i>tr.</i> , annoy.
	infestus, a, um, hostile.
	infimus. <i>See inferus.</i>

inflūō, ere, īflūxi, īfluxum (in + fluō), <i>intr.</i> , flow into, empty into.	instrūō, ere, īstrūxi, īstrūctus (in + strūō, build), <i>tr.</i> , arrange, draw up, form.
ingēns, ingēntis, huge, vast.	insula, ae, <i>f.</i> , island.
ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum (in + gradior, go), <i>intr.</i> , go into, enter.	īnsum, īnesse, īnfui, īnfutūrus (in + sum), <i>intr.</i> , <i>w. dat.</i> , be in, be among.
inicio, ere, iniēci, injectus (in + iaciō), <i>tr.</i> , put in.	intelligō, ere, intelligēxi, intelligēctus (inter + legō), <i>tr.</i> , learn, perceive, know.
inimicus, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + amīcus), hostile.	īntempestus, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + tempus), stormy.
iniquus, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + aequus), unfavorable, disadvantageous.	inter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , between, among, during; dare inter sē, exchange; cohortāti inter sē, encouraging one another.
initium, ī (ineō, begin), <i>n.</i> , beginning.	īntercēdō, ere, īntercessi, īntercessum (inter + cēdō), <i>intr.</i> , lie between, intervene.
iniūria, ae, <i>f.</i> , injury, violence.	īntereā (inter + is), <i>adv.</i> , meantime, meanwhile.
inopia, ae (inops, without means), <i>f.</i> , want, lack.	īnterficiō, ere, īnterfēci, īnterfectus (inter + faciō), <i>tr.</i> , kill.
inquam, def., say; inquit, said he.	īnterim, <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile.
inrideō, īre, inrisi, inrisus (in + rideō, laugh), <i>tr.</i> , laugh at, jeer, ridicule.	īnterior, īnterius (inter), inner, interior of; <i>sup.</i> intimus.
īnsanus, a, um (in <i>neg.</i> + sānus, sound), mad.	īnterscindō, ere, īnterscidi, īnterscissus (inter + scindō, break down), <i>tr.</i> , cut down, destroy.
īnsequor, īnsequi, īnsecūtus sum (in + sequor), <i>tr.</i> , follow, pursue.	īntersum, īnteresse, īnterfui, īnterfutūrus (inter + sum), <i>intr.</i> , be among, be present.
īnsideō, īre, īnsēdi, īn sessus (in + sedeō), <i>tr.</i> , occupy.	īntimus. See <i>īnterior</i> .
īnsidiae, īrum (īnsideō), <i>f. pl.</i> , ambush, treachery.	īntrā (inter), <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , in, during.
īnsidior, īrī, ītus sum (īnsidiae), <i>intr.</i> , <i>w. dat.</i> , lie in wait for, ambush.	īntrō, īrē, īvī, ītus, <i>tr.</i> , enter.
īnsignis, e (sīgnūm), remarkable, distinguished.	īntrōdūcō, ere, īntrōdūxi, īntrōductus (intrō, within + dūcō), <i>tr.</i> , lead in.
īnsiliō, īre, īnsiluī, īnsultus (in + saliō, leap), <i>tr.</i> , leap on.	īntrōrsus (intrō, within + versus), <i>adv.</i> , inside, within.
īnstār, <i>n.</i> <i>indecl.</i> , likeness; īnstār mūri, like a wall.	īntuli. See <i>īnfērō</i> .
īnstituō, ere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus (in + statuō), <i>tr.</i> , form, establish.	īnūtilis, e (in <i>neg.</i> + ūtilis), useless.
īnstitūtūm, ī (īnstituō), <i>n.</i> , purpose, custom, institution.	

inveniō, īre, invēni, inventus (in + veniō), <i>tr. and intr.</i> , come upon, find.	iūmentum, ī (iungō), <i>n.</i> , pack animal. iungō, ēre, iūnxi, iūnctus, <i>tr.</i> , join, fasten together.
inveterāscō, ēre, inveterāvi, — (in + veterāscō, grow old), <i>intr.</i> , become established.	iūnior, <i>comp.</i> of iuvenia.
invictus, a, um (in neg. + vincō), unconquered.	Iuppiter, Iovis, <i>m.</i> , Jupiter, chief of the Roman gods.
invitus, a, um, unwilling.	Iūra, ae, <i>f.</i> , the Jura Mountains, reaching from the Rhine to the Rhone.
Iovi. <i>See</i> Iuppiter.	iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī (iūs, law + iūrō, swear), <i>n.</i> , oath.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, <i>determ. pron.</i> , self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; very; even.	iūstitia, ae (iūstus, just), <i>f.</i> , justice, uprightness.
irātus, a, um (irāscor, be angry), angered, in anger.	iuvenis, e, young; <i>comp.</i> iūnior; <i>as subst.</i> iuvenis, is, <i>m.</i> , young man, youth.
is, ea, id, <i>determ. pron. and adj.</i> , he, she, it; this, that; is quī, he (one, a man) who.	iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, <i>tr.</i> , help, aid.
iste, ista, istud, <i>determ. pron. and adj.</i> , that (of yours).	L
ita (is), <i>adv.</i> , thus, so.	Labienus, ī, <i>m.</i> , one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Italia, ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy.	labor, ūris, <i>m.</i> , labor, work.
itaque (is), <i>conj.</i> , and so, accordingly, therefore.	labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus (labor), <i>intr.</i> , work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.
item (is), <i>adv.</i> , likewise, also.	laceſſō, ēre, laceſſīvī, laceſſītus, <i>tr.</i> , attack, harass.
iter, itineris, <i>n.</i> , journey, march; road, way, right of way; iter facere, march; ex itinere, on the march; magnum iter, forced march.	lacus, ūs, <i>m.</i> , lake.
iterum, <i>adv.</i> , again, a second time.	laetus, a, um, glad.
itum, itūrus. <i>See</i> eō.	laevus, a, um, left.
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, <i>tr.</i> , <i>w. inf.</i> , order, bid, command.	lapis, lapiſis, <i>m.</i> , stone.
iūdicium, ī (iūdex, judge), <i>n.</i> , judgment, trial.	largītiō, ūnis (largior, lavish), <i>f.</i> , liberality; bribery.
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus (iūdex, judge), <i>tr.</i> , judge.	lateō, ēre, latuī, —, <i>intr.</i> , be concealed, lie hid.
iugum, ī (iungō), <i>n.</i> , yoke; sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke (<i>made of spears crossed, in token of complete surrender</i>).	Latinus, a, um, Latin.
	lātitūdō, inis (lātus), <i>f.</i> , width, breadth.
	Latobrigī, ūrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii.
	latrō, ūnis, <i>m.</i> , robber, brigand.
	lātus, a, um, broad, wide.
	lātus. <i>See</i> ferō.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank.
 laudō, āre, āvī, ātus (*laus*, praise), *tr.*, praise, commend.
 lēgatiō, ūnis (*legō*, commission), *f.*, embassy, deputation.
 lēgātus, ī (*legō*, commission), *m.*, ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.
 legiō, ūnis (*legō*), *f.*, legion.
 legō, ere, lēgl, lēctus, *tr.*, choose.
 Lemannus, ī, lacus Lemannus, Lake of Geneva.
 lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
 levitās, ātis (*levis*, light), *f.*, lightness, fickleness.
 lēx, lēgis (*legō*), *f.*, law; lēgem ferre, propose, establish a law.
 liber, libri, *m.*, book.
 liber, libera, lēberum, free; *as subst.* liberi, ūrum, *m. pl.*, children.
 liberō, āre, āvī, ātus (*liber*), *tr.*, liberate, free.
 libertās, ātis (*liber*), *f.*, freedom, liberty.
 licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is allowed, permitted.
 lineaēmentum, ī (*linea*, line), *m.*, feature.
 littera, ae (*linō*, smear), *f.*, letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letters (*epistles*), documents.
 locus, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, loci and loca, place, position.
 longē (*longus*), *adv.*, far, far off.
 longus, a, um, long, distant.
 lūcūs, ī, *m.*, grove.
 lūdibrium, ī (*lūdus*), *n.*, jest, mockery.
 lūdicer, lūdicra, lūdicrum (*lūdus*), sportive, playful.
 lūdus, ī, *m.*, play, sport, game.
 lūna, ae, *f.*, moon.

lupa, ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
 lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, purify; review, inspect.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; prīmā lūce, at daybreak.
 lūxuria, ae, *f.*, excess, luxury.
M
 māchina, ae, *f.*, engine, contrivance.
 magis (*comp. of multum*), *adv.*, more, rather.
 magister, magistrī, *m.*, master, teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs (*magister*), *m.*, magistrate, officer.
 magnitūdō, inis (*magnus*), *f.*, size, greatness.
 magnopere (*magnus + opus*), *adv.*, very greatly.
 magnus, a, um, large, great; *comp.* maior, *sup.* maximus; maior nātū, older; maximus nātū, oldest.
 maior. See *magnus*.
 male (*malus*), *adv.*, badly; *comp.* peius, *sup.* pessimē.
 mālō, mālle, mālui (*magis + volō*), *tr. and intr.*, be more willing, prefer.
 malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.* peior, *sup.* pessimus.
 Māmurius, ī, *m.*, a Roman smith in the time of Numa.
 mandātum, ī (*mandō*), *n.*, order, command.
 mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, order, command.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intr.*, remain, stay.
 Mānēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Manes, shades of the dead.
 Mānlius, ī, *m.*, Titus Mānlius Torquātus, consul 343 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (mānsuētus, tame), <i>f.</i> , mildness, clemency.	mihi. <i>See ego.</i>
manus, ūs, <i>f.</i> , hand, band; manūs ferreae, grappling irons.	miles, mīlitis, <i>m.</i> , soldier.
Mārcus, ī, <i>m.</i> , a Roman name.	militāris, e (miles), military.
mare, maris, <i>n.</i> , sea; mari, by sea.	mīlle, indecl. adj. and noun, thousand; <i>pl.</i> mīllia, always noun; mīlle passūs, mille passuum, a Roman mile.
maritimus, a, um (mare), of the sea, maritime.	minimē (minimus). <i>See parum.</i>
Mārs, Martis, <i>m.</i> , Mars, the Roman god of war.	minimus, a, um (used as sup. of parvus), smallest, least.
māter, mātris, <i>f.</i> , mother; mātrem sē gessit, bore herself, acted like, a mother.	minor, minus (<i>see parvus</i>), smaller, less; minor nātū, younger.
mātrimōnium, i (māter), <i>n.</i> , marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry.	minus (used as comp. of parum), <i>adv.</i> , less; nihilō minus, nevertheless; si minus, if not.
mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>intr.</i> , hasten, hurry.	mīrabilis, e (mīror, wonder), wonderful.
maximē (maximus), <i>adv.</i> , very greatly, especially.	mīrāculum, ī (mīror, wonder), <i>n.</i> , wonder, prodigy.
maximus. <i>See magnus.</i>	mīrus, a, um, wonderful, surprising.
Maximus, ī, <i>m.</i> , a Roman cognomen. <i>See Valerius.</i>	miser, misera, miserum, wretched, poor.
mē, meī. <i>See ego.</i>	miserē (miser), <i>adv.</i> , wretchedly.
medius, a, um, middle; per mediōs cūstōdēs, through the midst of the guards; quem medium, the middle of which.	mitigō, āre, āvī, ātus (mītis, mild + agō), <i>tr.</i> , soften, civilize.
melior. <i>See bonus.</i>	mittō, ere, mīsi, missus, <i>tr.</i> , send, hurl.
melius. <i>See bene.</i>	mōbilitās, ātis (mōbilis, changeable), <i>f.</i> , fickleness.
memoria, ae, <i>f.</i> , memory.	moenia, moenium, <i>n. pl.</i> , walls, fortifications.
mēns, mentis, <i>f.</i> , mind.	moneō, ēre, monūi, monitus, <i>tr.</i> , warn, advise.
mēnsa, ae, <i>f.</i> , table.	monitus, ūs (moneō), <i>m.</i> , warning, counsel, suggestion.
mēnsis, is, <i>m.</i> , month.	mōns, montis, <i>m.</i> , mountain.
mercātor, ūris (mercōr, trade), <i>m.</i> , trader, merchant.	mora, ae, <i>f.</i> , delay.
Mercurius, ī, <i>m.</i> , Mercury, god of trade, and messenger of the gods.	morbus, ī, <i>m.</i> , sickness, illness; morbō extīnctus, died a natural death.
mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, <i>tr.</i> , dip, sink.	moriō, morī, mortuus sum, <i>intr.</i> , die.
metus, ūs, <i>m.</i> , fear, terror.	moror, ārī, ātus sum (mora), <i>intr.</i> , delay, hinder.
meus, a, um, poss. <i>adj.</i> , my, mine.	

mors, mortis, f., death.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, tr., move, influence; **castra movēre**, break up camp.

mox, adv., soon.

Mūcius, I., m., the name of a Roman family; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola**, a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.

Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius), Mucian.

mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.

multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.

multitūdō, inis (multus), f., numbers, multitude.

multō (abl. of multus), adv., much.

multum (multus), adv., much, greatly.

multus, a, um, much; *pl.*, many;

multā nocte, late at night; *ad* **multam noctem**, till late at night.

Mūnātius, I., m., Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mūnīmentum, i (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.

mūniō, ire, mūnīvi or mūnīi, mūnītus, tr., fortify, defend.

mūnītiō, ūnis (mūniō), f., fortification.

mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.

mūrus, I., m., wall.

N

nactus. *See* nanciscor.

nam, conj. Afor.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise.

nātiō, ūnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

nātū (nāscor), in age; **maior nātū**, older; **minor nātū**, younger.
nātūra, ae (nāscor), *f.*, nature, character.

nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.

nāvālis, e (nāvis), of ships, naval.

nāvis, is, f., ship.

-ne, enclitic, sign of an interrogative.

nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that.

nec. *See* neque.

necō, āre, āvī, ātus (nex), tr., kill, put to death.

nefāstus, a, um (nefās, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefāstus**, a day on which public business could not be transacted.

negō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.

negōtium, i, n., business, affair; *quicquid negōtiī*, any trouble.

nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), *m.* and *f.*, no one, nobody.

nemus, nemoris, n., grove.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.

neque, nec, conj., and not, but not; *neque . . . neque*, neither . . . nor.

Nervii, ūrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (nē + uter), neither (of two).

nex, necis, f., death, murder.

niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

nihil, indecl. n., nothing.

nihilō, adv., in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless. [except.

nisi (nē + sī), *conj.*, if not, unless; **nōbilis, e (nōsco, know)**, noble.

nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis), f., nobility, nobles.

- noceō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus, *intr.*, *w. dat.*, hurt, injure, harm.
- nocturnus, a, um (*nox*), by night, in the night.
- nōlo, nōlle, nōlui (*nē* + *voldō*), *tr. and intr.*, not to wish, be unwilling; *nōlītē*, *w. infin.*, do not.
- nōmen, nōminis (*nōsco*, know), *n.*, name.
- nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (*nōmen*), *tr.*, name, call.
- nōn, *adv.*, not.
- nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
- nōnnūllus, a, um (*nōn* + *nūllus*), some, several.
- Nōrēia, ae, *f.*, a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.
- Nōricus, a, um, Norican; ager Nōricus, a country between the Danube and the Alps.
- nōs, nostrum, *pers. pron.*, we, ourselves.
- noster, nostra, nostrum (*nōs*), poss. *adj.*, our, ours; *pl.*, nostri, īrum, our men, our troops.
- novem, *indecl.*, nine.
- Noviodūnum, ī, *n.*, a town of the Suessiones.
- novus, a, um, new; novissimum, last; novissimum agmen, the rear.
- nox, noctis, *f.*, night; multā nocte, late at night; ad multam noctem, till late at night.
- nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (*nūdus*, bare), *tr.*, make bare, clear.
- nūllus, a, um (*nē* + *ūllus*), no, not any, none, no one.
- num, *interrog. particle*, implying the answer 'no.'
- Numa, ae, *m.* See Pompilius.
- numerus, ī, *m.*, number.
- Numida, ae, *m.*, Numidian.
- Numitor, īris, *m.*, king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.
- numquam (*nē* + *umquam*, ever), *adv.*, never.
- nunc, *adv.*, now.
- nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (*nūntius*), *tr.*, report, announce.
- nūntius, ī, *m.*, messenger.
- nūper, *adv.*, recently, lately.
- nusquam (*nē* + *usquam*, anywhere), *adv.*, nowhere, on no occasion.

O

- ob, *prep. w. acc.*, for, on account of, because of.
- obaerātus, ī (*ob* + *aes*, money), *m.*, debtor.
- obdūcō, ere, obdūxī, obductus (*ob* + *dūcō*), *tr.*, extend, make.
- obruō, ere, obrui, obrutus (*ob* + *ruō*, rush), *tr.*, overwhelm, bury, crush.
- obses, obsidis (*obsideō*), *m.*, hostage, pledge.
- obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus (*ob* + *sedeō*), *tr.*, besiege.
- obsum, obesse, obfūl, obfutūrus (*ob* + *sum*), *w. dat.*, be against, injure.
- obtineō, ēre, obtinū, obtentus (*ob* + *teneō*), *tr.*, possess, obtain, retain.
- obveniō, īre, obvēnī, obventum (*ob* + *veniō*), *intr.*, come to, meet, come.
- occāsus, ūs (*occidō*, fall), *m.*, setting (of the sun).
- occidō, ere, occidi, occīsus (*ob* + *caedō*, cut down), *tr.*, cut down, kill, slay.
- occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, concealed.
- occupō, āre, āvī, ātus (*ob* + *capiō*), *tr.*, take possession of, seize, occupy.

Ōceanus, i, m., ocean.

Ocelum, i, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

octō, *indecl.*, eight.

oculus, i, m., eye.

odium, i (odi, hate), n., hatred, enmity.

omnīnō (omnis), *adv.*, altogether, at all.

omnis, e, all, every, whole.

opiniō, ūnis (opīnor, think), f., notion, belief, impression.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.* it is necessary, it is proper.

oppidānus, i (oppidum), m., inhabitant of a town, townsman.

oppidum, i, n., walled town.

opprimō, ere, opprīsī, oppressus (ob + premō, press), *tr.*, crush, fall upon.

oppugnātiō, ūnis (oppugnō), f., assault, storm, siege.

oppugnō, ēre, āvī, ātus (ob + pugnō), *tr.*, attack, besiege.

ops, opis, f., aid; pl., resources, wealth.

optimē (optimus), best, excellently. See bene.

optimus, a, um, *sup. of bonus*.

optiō, ūnis (optō), f., choice.

optō, ēre, āvī, ātus, wish, choose.

opus, operis, n., work, labor, fortification.

ōratiō, ūnis (ōrō), f., speech, words.

ōrdinō, ēre, āvī, ātus (ōrdō), *tr.*, arrange, regulate.

ōrdō, ūrdinis, m., line, rank.

Orgetorix, īgis, m., a chief of the Helvetii.

orior, orirī, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise.

ōrnātus, ūs (ōrnō, adorn), m., attire, decoration.

ōrō, ēre, āvī, ātus (ōs), *tr.*, beseech, beg.

ortus. See orior.

ōs, ūris, n., mouth, face.

P

P. = Pūblius.

pācō, ēre, āvī, ātus (pāx), *tr.*, pacify, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palūs, ūdis, f., marsh, swamp.

pandō, ere, pandī, passus, *tr.*, spread out; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands.

pār, paris, equal (to).

parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready.

pārēō, ēre, pārūi, pāritūrus, *intr. w. dat.*, obey.

parō, ēre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, prepare, provide.

pars, partis, f., part, side, direction.

parum, *adv.*, little; comp. minus; sup. minimē.

parvulus, a, um (parvus), very little; as subst. parvulus, i, m., little fellow.

parvus, a, um, little, small; comp. minor; sup. minimus.

passus. See pandō and patior.

passus, ūs, m., pace; mille passūs, pl. millia passuum, a mile.

pāstor, ūris (pāscō, feed), m., shepherd.

pateō, ēre, patuī, —, *intr.*, be open, extend.

pater, patris, m., father.

patior, pati, passus sum, *tr.*, suffer, allow, endure.

patria, ae (patrius), f., country, native land.

patrius, a, um (<i>pater</i>), ancestral.	perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous), <i>adv.</i> , continually, forever.
pauci, ūrum, few.	
paulisper, <i>adv.</i> , for a short time.	perrumpō, ere, perrūpī, perruptus (per + rumpō, break), <i>tr.</i> , break through.
paululum (<i>paulus</i> , small), <i>adv.</i> , a little, somewhat.	perspicīō, ere, perspēxī, perspectus (per + speciō, see), <i>tr.</i> , see through.
pāx, pācis, <i>f.</i> , peace.	persuādeō, ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (per + suādeō, persuade), <i>tr.</i> , <i>w. dat.</i> of <i>pers.</i> , persuade, prevail on.
peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>intr.</i> , transgress, offend.	pertineō, ēre, pertinuī, — (per + teneō), <i>intr.</i> , extend, pertain, relate.
pecūnia, ae (<i>pecus</i>), <i>f.</i> , money.	pertrāctus. <i>See pertrahō.</i>
pecus, pecoris, <i>n.</i> , cattle, herd.	pertrahō, ere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus (per + trahō), <i>tr.</i> , drag, lead.
pedes, peditis (<i>pēs</i>), <i>m.</i> , foot soldier; <i>pl.</i> , infantry.	perveniō, īre, pervēnī, perventum, (per + veniō) <i>intr.</i> , arrive at, reach.
Pedius, ī, <i>m.</i> , Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.	pēs, pedis, <i>m.</i> , foot.
peior, <i>comp. of malus</i> .	pessimē, <i>sup. of male</i> .
peius, <i>comp. of male</i> .	pessimus, <i>sup. of malus</i> .
pello, ere, pepuli, pulsus, <i>tr.</i> , drive out, expel, rout, conquer.	petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus, <i>tr.</i> , aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.
per, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , through, over, by, by means of.	pietās, ātis (<i>pius</i> , pious), <i>f.</i> , devotion, loyalty.
peragrō, āre, āvī, ātus (per + ager), <i>tr.</i> , wander through, roam over.	piger, pigra, pigrum, slow, lazy.
perdūcō, ere, perdūxi, perductus (per + dūcō), <i>tr.</i> , lead, lead through, construct.	pignus, pignoris, <i>n.</i> , pledge, assurance.
perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual, never failing.	pilum, ī, <i>n.</i> , javelin.
perficiō, ere, perfēci, perfectus (per + faciō), <i>tr.</i> , accomplish, finish, complete.	pirus, ī, <i>f.</i> , pear tree.
perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faithless, treacherous.	Plancus, ī. <i>See Münātius.</i>
periclitōr, āri, ātus sum, <i>tr.</i> , make trial of, try.	plāniēs, ī (plānus, flat), <i>f.</i> plain, level ground.
periculum, ī, <i>n.</i> , danger.	plēbēs, ī, or plēbs, plēbis, <i>f.</i> , common people.
peritus, a, um, skillful.	plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, generally in plural, most, very many.
permittō, ere, permisi, permisus (per + mittō), <i>tr.</i> , give up, intrust, permit.	plūrimus, a, um (<i>sup. of multus</i>), most, very many; plūrimū posse, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.
permoveō, ēre, permōvi, permōtus (per + moveō), <i>tr.</i> , move, arouse, influence, alarm.	plūs, <i>comp. of multum</i> .

plūs, plūris (<i>comp. of multus</i>), more; <i>pl.</i> , several, more.	potēns, potentis, <i>adj.</i> (<i>pres. part. of possum</i>), powerful, able.
pōculum, ī, <i>n.</i> , drinking cup.	potentātus, ūs (<i>potēns</i>), <i>m.</i> , supreme power, rule.
poena, ae, <i>f.</i> , punishment, penalty; poenās dare, suffer punishment.	potestās, ātis (<i>potis</i> , able), <i>f.</i> , power, authority, privilege.
Poenī, ūrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , Carthaginians.	potior, potirī, potitus sum (<i>potis, able</i>), <i>intr., w. abl.</i> , get possession of.
polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.	prae, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> , before.
Pompēius, ī, <i>m.</i> , Pompey.	praebēō, ēre, praebui, praebitus (<i>prae + habeō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , furnish, supply.
Pompilius, ī, <i>m.</i> , Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.	praecinō, ere, praecinuī, — (<i>prae + canō</i> , sing), <i>tr.</i> , play before.
pōnō, ere, posui, positus, <i>tr.</i> , place, put, pitch (a camp).	praeda, ae, <i>f.</i> , booty, spoil.
pōns, pontis, <i>m.</i> , bridge.	praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus (<i>prae + faciō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , set over, put in charge of.
poposci. <i>See poscō.</i>	praelūceō, ēre, praelūxi, — (<i>prae + luceō</i> , shine), <i>intr.</i> , shine before.
populor, ārī, ātus sum (<i>populus</i>), <i>tr.</i> , ravage, lay waste.	praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemissus (<i>prae + mittō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , send ahead, dispatch.
populus, ī, <i>m.</i> , people.	praemium, ī, <i>n.</i> , reward.
Porsena, ae, <i>f.</i> , king of Clusium in Etruria.	praescribō, ere, praescripsi, praescriptus (<i>prae + scribō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , direct, order.
porta, ae, <i>f.</i> , gate, door.	praesidium, ī (<i>praesideō</i> , defend), <i>n.</i> , guard, defense, garrison.
portō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>tr.</i> , carry, bring.	praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus (<i>prae + stō</i> , stand), <i>intr.</i> , stand before, surpass, excel; <i>tr.</i> , show.
portus, ūs, <i>m.</i> , port, harbor.	praesum, praesesse, praefui, praefuturus (<i>prae + sum</i>), <i>intr., w. dat.</i> , be at head of, be in charge of, command. [besides.
poscō, ere, poposci, —, <i>tr.</i> , ask, demand.	praetereā (<i>praeter</i> , beyond + <i>is</i>), <i>adv.</i> , praeveniō, īre, praevēni, praeventus (<i>prae + veniō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , come before oustrip, forestall.
possideō, ēre, possēdi, —, <i>tr.</i> , hold, occupy.	
possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can; plūrimum posse, be very powerful.	
post, <i>adv.</i> , afterwards, later.	
post, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , after, behind.	
posteā (<i>post + is</i>), <i>adv.</i> , afterwards.	
posterus, a, um, following, next; <i>comp.</i> posterior; <i>sup.</i> postrēmus.	
postquam (<i>post + quam</i>), <i>conj.</i> , after.	
postridiē (<i>posterus + diēs</i>), <i>adv.</i> , on the following day.	
postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>tr.</i> , demand, ask.	

- prātum, ī, n.**, field, meadow.
primō (prīmus), *adv.*, at first.
prīmūm (prīmus), *adv.*, first; *quam prīmūm*, as soon as possible.
prīmus, a, um, first; *prīmā lūce*, at daybreak; *prīmus dēvīcit*, was the first to conquer.
prīnceps, prīncipis (prīmus + capiō), *m.*, chief, leader, author.
prior, prius (prō), former, previous.
priusquam (prius, sooner + quam), conj., before, sooner than.
privātus, a, um (privō, deprive), private.
prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp. prior*; *sup. pri-mus*.
Proca, ae, m., a king of Alba Longa.
prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum (prō + cēdō), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.
procūl, adv., far off, from afar.
prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + cūrō), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.
prōditiō, ūnis (prōdō, betray), f., treachery, treason.
proelium, ī, n., battle.
profectiō, ūnis (proficīscor), f., setting forth, departure.
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (prōficiō, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.
profugiō, ere, profūgī, — (prō + fugiō), *intr.*, flee, escape.
prōgredī, prōgredī, prōgressus sum (prō + gradī, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.
prohibeō, ēre, prohibūi, prohibitus (prō + habēō), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prevent.
prōiciō, ere, prōiēcī, prōiectus (prō + iaciō), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.
prōmittō, ere, prōmisi, prōmissus (prō + mittō), *tr.*, promise.
prope, adv., near, nearly; *comp. pro-pius*; *sup. proximē*.
properō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr., hasten.
propinquitās, ātis (propinquus, near), f., nearness, relationship.
propior, propius (prope), nearer.
propius (comp. of prope), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.
prōpōnō, ere, prōposūi, prōpositus (prō + pōnō), *tr.*, set forth, declare, propose.
propter, prep. w. acc., on account of.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūi, prōfutū-rus (prō + sum), *intr. w. dat.*, be of service or use to, benefit.
prōtinus, adv., ahead, directly.
prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus (prō + turbō, confuse), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.
prōvincia, ae, f., province.
prōvolō, āre, āvī, — (prō + volō), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.
proximē (proximus), *adv.*, last, recently.
proximus, a, um (prope), nearest, next; in *proximō*, near by.
prūdēns, prūdentis (prō + vidēns), foreseeing, wise.
prūdenter (prūdēns), *adv.*, wisely.
pūblicus, a, um (populus), public; *rēs pūblica*, the state, republic.
Pūblius, ī, m., a Roman name.
pudor, ūris, m., sense of shame, honor.
puella, ae (puer), f., girl.
puer, puerī, m., boy.
pugna, ae, f., fight, battle.

pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum (*pugnus, fist*), *intr.*, fight; **pugnātūm est**, they fought.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful, pretty.

Pulcher, Pulchri, *m.*, P. Claudius Pulcher, consul 249 B.C.

pulchrē (*pulcher*), *adv.*, beautifully.

pullārius, ī (*pullus*), *m.*, keeper of the

sacred chickens.

pullus, ī, m., chicken.

pulsus. *See pellō*.

Punicus, a, um, Punic, Phoenician, Carthaginian.

pūniō, īre, pūnīvī, pūnītūs (*poena*), *tr.*, punish.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, (*of the*) Pyrenees.

Q

quadrāgintā, *indecl.*, forty.

quadringentī, ae, a, four hundred.

quaerō, ēre, quaesīvī, quaesītūs, to seek, ask. [possible.]

quam, than; *with a sup.*, as possible, **quantus, a, um**, how great, as.

quārē (*quae + rēs*), *adv.*, for which reason, therefore.

quārtus (*quattuor*), *adj.*, fourth.

quasi (*quam + sī*), *adv.*, on the ground that, because.

quattuor, *indecl.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, therefore.

quicquam. *See quisquam*.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*, certain, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, adv., indeed, truly.

quīn, conj., that not; that; from (*after verbs of hindering*).

quindecim (*quinque + decem*), *indecl.*, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnque, indef., five.

Quīntus, ī (*quintus*, fifth), *m.*, a Roman name.

Quirinālis, is, *m.*, Quirinal, one of the hills of Rome.

Quirinūs, ī, n., the name given to Romulus after his deification.

quis, quae, quid and qui, quae or qua, quod, interrog. and indef. pron., who, which, what; any, any one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quodquam, *indef. pron.*, any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron., each (one), every (one).

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis (*qui + vis*, *from volō*), *indef. pron.*, any one you please.

quōd (*qui*), *adv.*, where, whither.

quod (*qui*), *conj.*, because.

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.

quoniām, conj., since, because.

quoque, adv., also, likewise.

R

rapiō, ēre, rapui, raptus, tr., seize, steal.

ratiō, ūnis (*reor, think*), *f.*, consideration, method.

ratis, is, f., raft.

Rauraci, ūrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe near the Rhine.

recidō, ēre, recidi, — (*caddō*), *intr.*, fall back, fall, come back to.

recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (capiō), *tr.*, take back, receive; *sē recipere*, betake one's self, retreat.
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (dō), *tr.*, give back, return, render.
***redeō, redire, redilī, redditūrus, intr.,** go back, return.
redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (integer, whole), *tr.*, restore, renew.
reditō, ūnis (redeō), f., return.
redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (dūco), *tr.*, lead back.
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (ferō), *tr.*, carry back; *pedem referre*, retreat.
rēgina, ae (rēx), f., queen.
rēgius, a, um (rēx), kingly, royal; *aedēs rēgiae*, palace.
rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnūm), intr., be king, reign. [kingdom.
rēgnūm, ī (rēx), n., royal power,
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, tr., guide, rule.
relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (lābor, slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.
religiō, ūnis, f., piety; *pl.*, rites.
relinquō, ere, reliqui, relicitus (linquō, leave), *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
reliquus, a, um, remaining, left, the rest of; *nihil reliqui*, nothing left; *in reliquum tempus*, for the future.
remaneō, ēre, remānsi, — (maneō), *intr.*, remain, stay.
remūneror, ārī, ātus sum (mūnus), *tr.*, repay, reward.
Remus, ī, m., the brother of Romulus.
Rēmus, ī, m., a Reman, one of the Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūntiō), tr., report.
repellō, ere, repulī, repulsus (pellō), *tr.*, drive back, repulse.

repente, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus (pariō, produce), *tr.*, find, discover, ascertain.
repulī. See *repellō*.
rehendō, ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus (prehendō, seize), tr., blame, censure.
reprōmittō, ere, reprōmisī, reprōmissus (prōmittō), tr., promise in return.
rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, circumstance; **rēs frūmentāria,** provisions, supplies of grain; **rēs pūblica,** state, republic; **quam ob rem,** wherefore, therefore.
rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus (scindō, break down), tr., break down, destroy.
resistō, ere, restitī, — (sistō, place), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, oppose, resist, hold one's ground.
respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus (spondeō, promise), tr., reply, answer.
restituō, ere, restitūl, restitūtus (statuō), tr., renew, restore.
retineō, ēre, retinuī, retentus (teneō), *tr.*, hold back, keep back, detain, retain.
revertor, revertī, revertī, reverēsus (vertō), intr., turn back, return.
reviviscō, ere, —, — (vivō), intr., be alive again.
revocō, āre, āvī, ātus (vocō), tr., recall.
rēx, rēgis, m., king.
Rhēa, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine.
Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.

rigō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., wet, moisten.
rīpa, ae, f., bank (of a river).

rōbur, rōboris, n., oak; strength.
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., ask, beg.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman;
as subst. *Rōmānus, i, m.*, a Roman.

Rōmulus, i, m., the reputed founder
of Rome.

rosa, ae, f., rose.

rūmor, ūris, m., rumor, report.

rūrsus (revertor), adv., back, again.
rūs, rūris, n., the country; *rūri*, in
the country.

S

Sabinus, i, m. 1. A Sabine. 2. See
Titūrius.

Sabis, is, m., a river of Belgic Gaul,
the modern Sambre.

sacer, sacra, sacram, holy, sacred;
as subst. *sacrum, i, n.*, a holy thing,
religious rite.

sacerdōs, ūtis (sacer), m. and f.,
priest, priestess.

sacrificium, i (sacer + faciō), n.,
sacrifice.

sacrum. See sacer.

saepe, adv., often; *saepius*, very
often.

saepēs, is, f., hedge, fence.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

sagittarius, i (sagitta), m., bowman.

Salii, ūrum (saliō, leap), m., dancing
priests of Mars.

saltem, adv., at least.

saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), m., jump;
ravine.

Santonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe
near the Garonne.

sarcina, ae, f., bundle, pack.

satis, adv. and indecl. noun, enough.

saxum, i, n., rock, stone.

Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed),
m., a surname of Gaius Mucius.

scapha, ae, f., skiff, boat.

scientia, ae (sciō), f., knowledge,
skill.

sciō, scire, scīvī or scīi, scītus, tr.,
know, know how.

scribā, ae (scribō), m., writer, scribe,
secretary.

scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus, tr., write.
scūtum, i, n., shield.

sē. See sui.

sēcrētus, a, um (sēcernō, separate),
concealed, hidden, secret. [along.

secundum (secundus), prep. w. acc.,
secundus, a, um (sequor), following,
second; favorable.

secūtus. See sequor.

sed, conj., but.

sēdecim, indecl., sixteen.

sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessum, intr., sit.

sedile, is (sedeō), n., seat.

sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.

Segusiāvī, ūrum, m. pl., a tribe of
Celtic Gaul.

sellā, ae (sedeō), f., seat, chair; *sellā*
curūlis, a portable chair, opening
like a camp-stool. Its use belonged
at first only to the king, but later
to curule aediles, praetors, consuls,
dictators, and the Flamines.

semper, adv., always, ever.

senātor, ūris (senex), m., senator.

senātus, ūs (senex), m., senate.

senectūs, ūtis (senex), f., old age.

senex, gen. senis, old, aged; comp.
senior; sup. *maximus nātū*.

Senonēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Celtic
Gaul.

sententia, ae (<i>sentiō</i> , discern), <i>f.</i> , opinion, decision.	sociō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>socius</i>), <i>tr.</i> , join, share.
sepeliō, ire, sepelivī, sepultus, tr., septem, indecl. , seven. [bury.]	socius, ī (<i>sequor</i>), <i>m.</i> , companion, ally.
septimus, a, um (<i>septem</i>), <i>adj.</i> , seventh.	sōl, sōlis, m. , sun; sōle ortō , at sunrise.
septuāgintā, indecl. , seventy.	soleō, ēre, solitus sum, intr. , be accustomed.
sepultus. <i>See</i> <i>sepeliō</i> .	sōlitūdō, inis (<i>sōlus</i>), <i>f.</i> , wilderness.
Sēquānus, a, um , Sequanian; <i>as subst.</i>	sōlitus. <i>See</i> <i>soleō</i> .
Sēquānus, ī, m. , a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.	sōllicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. , stir up, arouse, provoke.
sequor, sequī, secūtūs sum, tr. , follow.	sōlus, a, um , only, alone, sole.
servō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>servus</i>), <i>tr.</i> , keep, preserve, save.	sōmnium, ī (<i>somnus</i>), <i>n.</i> , dream.
servus, ī, m. , slave.	somnus, ī, m. , sleep.
sēsē. <i>See</i> <i>sui</i> .	soror, ūris, f. , sister.
sex, indecl. , six.	spatiūm, ī, n. , space, distance, time, opportunity.
sī, conj. , if; sī minus , if not.	spectāculum, ī (<i>spectō</i> , behold), <i>n.</i> , sight, show, spectacle.
sibi. <i>See</i> <i>sui</i> .	speculātor, ūris, m. , scout, spy.
sīc, adv. , thus, so.	spērō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>spēs</i>), <i>tr.</i> , hope, expect.
siccus, a, um , dry; <i>in siccō</i> , on dry ground.	spēs, speī, f. , hope.
significō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>signum</i> + <i>faciō</i>), <i>tr.</i> , signify, declare.	sponte (<i>abl.</i>), of one's own accord.
signum, ī, n. , sign, signal, standard, ensign; signa convertere , face about; signa inferre , charge.	statim (<i>stō</i>), <i>adv.</i> , forthwith, immediately.
silēns, silentis (<i>sileō</i> , be still), silent, quiet.	statiō, ūnis (<i>stō</i>), <i>f.</i> , post, picket, guard.
silva, ae, f. , wood, forest.	statua, ae (<i>statuō</i>), <i>f.</i> , image, statue.
silvestris, e (<i>silva</i>), wooded.	statuō, ere, statuī, statūtūs, tr. , place, decide, determine.
similis, e , like, similar.	stella, ae, f. , star.
simulō, āre, āvī, ātus (<i>similis</i>), <i>tr.</i> , pretend.	stipendium, ī (<i>stīps</i> , gift + <i>pendō</i> , pay), <i>n.</i> , pay, tribute.
sine, prep. w. abl. , without.	strepitus, ūs, m. , noise.
singulī, ae, a , one by one, individual, each.	studeō, ēre, studui, —, intr. , be eager for, desire.
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum , left.	studium, ī (<i>studeō</i>), <i>n.</i> , zeal, eagerness.
societās, ātis (<i>socius</i>), <i>f.</i> , alliance.	

- stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.**
- sub, prep. w. abl. and acc.: w. abl., under, below, at the foot of; w. acc., under, up to, to the foot of.**
- subdūcō, ere, subdūxi, subductus (sub + dūcō), tr., bring up.**
- subitō (subitus, sudden), adv., suddenly.**
- sublātus. See tollō. [denly.]**
- submittō, ere, submissi, submissus (sub + mitto), tr., send, furnish.**
- subruō, ere, subrui, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), tr., dig under, undermine.**
- subsequor, subsequi, subsecūtus sum (sub + sequor), tr., follow, pursue.**
- subsidiū, ī (sub + sedeō), n., aid, relief.**
- succēdō, ere, successi, successum (sub + cēdō), tr. and intr., come up, approach. [proach.]**
- successus, ūs (succēdō), m., ap-**
- Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.**
- sufficiō, ere, suffici, suffectum (sub + faciō), intr., be sufficient.**
- sui, pers. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē, sēsē; inter sē, to one another.**
- sum, esse, fui, futūrus, intr., be; w. dat. of possession, have.**
- summa, ae (summus), f., the whole; leadership, supremacy.**
- summus. See superus.**
- sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, tr., take, assume, begin (battle).**
- super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, upon, in addition to.**
- superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.**
- supericiō, ere, superiēci, superiectus (super + iaciō), tr., throw across.**
- superior. See superus.**
- superō, āre, āvī, ātus (superus), tr., surpass, overcome, conquer.**
- supersedeō, ēre, supersēdi, supersesus (super + sedeō), intr., w. dat., be superior, refrain from.**
- supersum, superesse, superfui, superfutūrus (super + sum), intr., w. dat., be over, survive.**
- superus, a, um (super), above; comp. superior, ius, upper, former; sup. suprēmus, summus, highest, very great, top of.**
- superveniō, īre, supervēni, supervenitum (super + veniō), intr., arrive.**
- supplicium, ī (supplex, suppliant), n., punishment, death.**
- suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above, before.**
- suprēmus. See superus.**
- suscipiō, ere, suscēpi, susceptus (sub + capiō), tr., undertake.**
- sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus (sustineō), tr., endure, withstand.**
- sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus (sub + teneō), tr. and intr., hold up, withstand, sustain.**
- sustuli. See tollō.**
- suus, a, um (sui), his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; suaque omnia, all their possessions.**

T

- T. = Titus. [verbs].**
- tam, adv., so (w. adjectives and ad-**
- tamen, adv., however, yet, nevertheless.**
- tantus, a, um (tam), so great, such.**
- Tarpēia, ae, f., a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.**

Tatius, *i.* *m.*, Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.
tē, *acc. of tū*.

tēlum, *i.* *n.*, missile, weapon.

temeritās, *ātis*, *f.*, rashness.

tempestās, *ātis* (**tempus**), *f.*, storm,

templum, *i.* *n.*, temple. [tempest.

tempus, **temporis**, *n.*, time, occasion.

tendō, *ere*, **tetendī**, tentus and **tēn-**

sus, *tr.*, spread out, stretch.

teneō, *ēre*, **tenuī**, —, *tr.*, hold. [delicate.

tener, **tenera**, **tenerum**, tender, young,

terra, *ae*, *f.*, earth, land, country;

terrā, by land. •

terreō, *ēre*, **terrūi**, **territus**, *tr.*,
frighten, terrify.

tertius, *a.* *um* (**trēs**), third.

testūdō, *inis*, *f.*, tortoise; shed.

Teutoni, *ōrum* or **Teutonēs**, *um*, *m.*
pl., Teutons, a Germanic people on
the Baltic.

Tiberis, *is*, *m.*, the Tiber.

tibi, *dat. of tū*.

tibicen, *inis*, *m.*, piper, flute player.

timeō, *ēre*, **timuī**, —, *tr. and intr.*,
fear, be afraid of.

timidus, *a.* *um* (**timeō**), afraid, timid.

timor, *ōris*, *m.*, fear.

Titūrius, *i.* *m.*, Quintus Titūrius Sa-
binus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, *i.* *m.*, a Roman name.

tollō, *ere*, **sustuli**, **sublātus**, *tr.*, lift
up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, *ium*, *m. pl.*, Tolosates, inhab-
itants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, *i* (**torqueō**, twist), *n.*, a
military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, *i* (**torquis**, necklace), *m.*,
a surname of Titus Manlius. See
Mānlius.

tōtus, *a.* *um*, whole, all.

trādō, *ere*, **trādidi**, **trāditus** (**trāns** +
dō), *tr.*, give over, give up, deliver,
surrender.

trādūcō, *ere*, **trādūxi**, **trāductus**
(**trāns** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead over,
transport.

trāiciō, *ere*, **trāiēci**, **trāiectus** (**trāns**
+ **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw or carry across,
pass over, transfix.

Trallēs, **Trallium**, *f.*, a town of
Lydia.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, over,
through.

trānseō, *īre*, **trānsii**, **trānsitus** (**trāns**
+ **eō**), *tr. and intr.*, cross, go over,
pass over, go across.

trānsfugiō, *ere*, **trānsfūgi**, — (**trāns**
+ **fugiō**), *intr.*, flee over, go over.

trānsgredior, **trānsgredi**, **trānsgres-**
sus sum (**trāns** + **gradior**, go), *tr.*,
go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, *īre*, **trānsiluī**, — (**trāns** +
saliō, leap), *tr.*, leap over, jump
across.

trānsversus, *a.* *um* (**trānsvertō**, turn
across), transverse; **trānsversa**
fossa, cross ditch.

trecenti, *ae*, *a* (**trēs** + centum), three
hundred.

tredecim (**trēs** + decem), *indecl.*, thir-
teen.

trēs, *tria, three.*

tribūnal, *ālis* (**tribūnus**), *n.*, judg-
ment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, *i* (**tribus**, tribe), *m.*, tribune,
a military officer.

triduum, *i* (**trēs** + **diēs**), *n.*, interval
of three days.

trigintā, *indecl.*, thirty.

triumphus, *i*, *m.*, triumph.

tū, *tui*, *pers. pron.*, you, thou.

tuba, ae, f., trumpet.

tuli. *See ferō.*

Tulingī, örūm, m. *pl.*, a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

tum, *adv.*, then, in the next place.

tumultus, ī, m., uproar, disturbance.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turba, ae, f., throng, crowd.

turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turris, is, f., tower.

tütēla, ae (tueor, protect), m., guardian, protection.

tütus, a, um (tueor, protect), safe.

tuus, a, um (tū), your, yours.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ūllus, a, um, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup.* ultimus, a, um.

ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, farther.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unde, *adv.*, whence.

ūndēcim (ūnus + decem), *indecl.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from or on all sides.

ūniversus, a, um (ūnus + vertō, turn), whole, entire.

ūnus, a, um, one.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

ūsus, a, um. *See ūtor.*

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), m., use, advantage, benefit, help; ūsuī esse, be of service.

ut, ūtī, (1) *adv.*, as when; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.

uti. *See ut.*

ūti. *See ūtor.*

ūtilis, e (ūtor), useful.

utinam, *adv.*, O that, would that, may. [employ.]

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, w. *abl.*, use, uxor, öris, f., wife.

V

vacuus, a, um, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadum, ī, n., shoal, ford.

vāgitus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), m., crying, squalling.

Valerius, ī, m., Mārcus Valerius Maximus Corvinus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, a, um (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vällum, ī, n., wall, rampart, earthworks.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus (vāstus), tr., lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, vast, enormous.

vēlōcitās, ātis (vēlōx), f., speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

velut, velutī, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

venia, ae, f., favor, permission.

veniō, īre, vēni, ventum, *intr.*, come; in fidem venire, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, ārī, ātus sum, tr., hunt, chase.

verbum, ī, n., word; verba facere, speak.

vereor, ērī, veritus sum, tr., fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, *intr.*, lie toward, incline.

veritus. *See vereor.*

vērō (vērus, true), *adv.*, in fact, indeed, however.

vertex , <i>verticis</i> (<i>vertō</i> , turn), <i>m.</i> , summit, crest.	vindicō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , punish, inflict punishment.
vērum (<i>vērus</i> , true), <i>adv.</i> , certainly, but.	vinea , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , a military shed.
vēscor , <i>vēsci</i> , —, <i>def.</i> , <i>w. abl.</i> , eat.	vinum , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> , wine.
Vesta , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , goddess of the hearth, and hence of the family and state. Her sacred fire, kept continually burning in her temple near the Forum, was watched by six priest- esses, called Vestals.	vinxi . <i>See</i> <i>vinciō</i> .
vester , <i>vestra</i> , <i>vestrum</i> (<i>vōs</i>), your, yours.	vir , <i>virī</i> , <i>m.</i> , man.
vestis , <i>is</i> , <i>f.</i> , garment, clothing.	virēs . <i>See</i> <i>vīs</i> .
vetō , <i>āre</i> , <i>vetūi</i> , <i>vetitus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , forbid.	virgō , <i>virginis</i> , <i>f.</i> , virgin, maiden, girl.
vetus , <i>veteris</i> , old, ancient; <i>comp.</i> <i>vetustior</i> ; <i>sup.</i> <i>veterimus</i> .	Viromanduī , <i>ōrum</i> , <i>m. pl.</i> , a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
vēxillum , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> , a military ensign.	virtūs , <i>virtūtis</i> (<i>vir</i>), <i>f.</i> , manhood, virtue, bravery, courage.
via , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , way, road, street, jour- ney.	vīs , <i>vīm</i> , <i>f.</i> , power, force, number; <i>pl.</i> <i>virēs</i> , strength.
vīci . <i>See</i> <i>vincō</i> .	vīta , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , life.
vīcinus , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (<i>vicus</i>), neighboring, near.	vīvō , <i>ere</i> , <i>vīxi</i> , —, <i>intr.</i> , live.
vīctor , <i>ōris</i> (<i>vincō</i>), <i>m.</i> , conqueror, victor.	vīx , <i>adv.</i> , hardly, barely.
vīctōria , <i>ae</i> (<i>victor</i>), <i>f.</i> , victory.	vīxi . <i>See</i> <i>vīvō</i> .
vīctus , <i>victūrus</i> . <i>See</i> <i>vincō</i> .	vōcō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> (<i>vōx</i>), <i>tr.</i> , call, summon.
vīcus , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i> , village.	Vocontiī , <i>ōrum</i> , <i>m. pl.</i> , a tribe of Gaul.
vidēlicet (<i>videō</i> + <i>licet</i>), <i>adv.</i> , of course, that is.	1. volō , <i>velle</i> , <i>volui</i> , —, wish, desire, be willing.
videō , <i>ēre</i> , <i>vidī</i> , <i>vīsus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , see; <i>pass.</i> , seem, appear.	2. volō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātūrus</i> , <i>intr.</i> , fly.
vīglia , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , watching, watch (a fourth part of the night).	voluntārius , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> (<i>voluntās</i>), will- ing, voluntary.
vīginti , <i>indecl.</i> , twenty.	voluntās , <i>ātis</i> (1. <i>volō</i>), <i>f.</i> , desire, consent, favor.
vīnciō , <i>ire</i> , <i>vinxi</i> , <i>vinctus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , bind.	vōs , <i>pl. of tū</i> .
vīncō , <i>ere</i> , <i>vīci</i> , <i>victus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , conquer, overcome.	vōveō , <i>ēre</i> , <i>vōvī</i> , <i>vōtus</i> , <i>tr.</i> , vow, promise.
vīnculum , <i>i</i> (<i>vinciō</i>), <i>n.</i> , chain, fetter; in or ex <i>vīculis</i> , in chains.	vōx , <i>vōcis</i> , <i>f.</i> , voice; <i>pl.</i> , words.
	vulgō (<i>vulgis</i> , multitude), <i>adv.</i> , gen- erally, everywhere.
	vulnerō , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> (<i>vulnus</i>), <i>tr.</i> , wound.
	vulnus , <i>vulneris</i> , <i>n.</i> , wound.
	vultur , <i>vulturis</i> , <i>m.</i> , vulture.
	vultus , <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i> , expression, looks, countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH—LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

able, potēns, potentis; **be able**, possum, posse, potui.
about to, be, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *fut. participle*.
above, superus.
absent, be, absum, āfūi, āfutūrus.
abundance, cōpia, ae, f.
accomplish, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēci, cōnfectus.
account of, on, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*
across, trāns, *w. acc.*; (**a bridge**) across the river, in flūmine.
adjoining, finitimus, a, um.
administer, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
advance, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.
advantage, ūsus, ūs, m.
advice, cōnsilium, ī, n.
advise, moneō, ēre, monui, monitus.
affair, rēs, reī, f.
afraid, be, timeō, ēre, timui, —.
after, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.
afterwards, *adv.*, posteā.
against, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; **be against**, obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus.

agreeable, grātus, a, um.
aid, auxilium, ī, n. [w. dat.
aid, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus,
aim, petō, ere, petīvī or petīi, petitus.
alarm, permōveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.
alliance, amīctia, ae, f.
allow, patior, patī, passus sum; permittō, ere, permīstī, permīssum; cōcēdō, ere, concessī, concessum.
ally, socius, ī, m.
alone, sōlus, a, um.
already, iam.
although, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 315.
always, semper.
am, sum, esse; fui, futūrus.
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, m.
among, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; **be among**, īsum, īnesse, īfui, īfutūrus; intersum, interesse, interful, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*
ample, amplus, a, um.
ancient, vetus, veteris.
and, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.
animal, animal, animālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
another, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, aliēnus, a, um.

- answer**, respondeō, ēre, respondī, re-spōnsus.
- any, any one**, ūllus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod; quis-quam, quicquam; quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs.
- appoint**, cōstituō, ere, cōnstitui, cōn-stitūtus.
- approach**, adventus, ūs, m.; aditus, ' ūs, m.
- approach**, appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātūm, w. dat.; accēdō, ere, ac-cessī, accessūrus, w. ad and acc.
- Ariovistus**, Ariovistus, ī, m.
- arm**, armō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
- arms**, arma, ūrum, n. plur.
- army**, exercitus, ūs, m.; army on the march, agmen, agminis, n.
- around**, circum, w. acc.
- arouse**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātūs; per-moveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
- arrange**, instruō, ere, īstrūxi, īn-strūctus.
- arrival**, adventus, ūs, m.
- arrive**, perveniō, īre, pervēnī, per-ventum.
- arrow**, sagitta, ae, f.
- art**, ars, artis, f.
- ascertain**, reperiō, īre, repperī, reper-tus.
- ask**, rogō, āre, āvī, ātūs; petō, ere, petivī or petilī, petitus; mandō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
- assemble**, conveniō, īre, convēnī, conuentus.
- at, ad**, w. acc.; sign of abl. of time.
- Athens**, Athēnae, īrum, f. plur.
- attack**, impetus, ūs, m.
- attack**, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātūs; lacessō, ere, lacessivī, lacessitus.
- attempt**, cōnor, āri, ātūs sum.
- authority**, auctōritās, ātis, f.; potes-tās, ātis, f.
- await**, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
- away**, be, absum, abesse, āfūl, āfu-tūrus.

B

- bad**, malus, a, um.
- baggage**, impedimenta, ūrum, n. plur.
- band**, manus, ūs, f.
- bank (of river)**, ripa, ae, f.
- barbarous**, barbarus, a, um.
- battle**, proelium, ī, n.; pugna, ae, f.; line of battle, aciēs, aciēl, f.
- be**, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
- bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātūs.
- beautiful**, pulcher, pulchra, pul-chrum.
- beautifully**, pulchrē.
- because**, quod; abl. of cause; be-cause of, propter, w. acc.
- before**, prō, w. abl.; ante, w. acc.
- beg**, petō, ere, petivī or petilī, petitus; rogō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
- begin**, coepī, coepisse, coeptūrus sum;
- begin battle**, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.
- behalf of**, in, prō, w. abl.
- behind**, post, w. acc.
- Belgae**, Belgae, īrum, m.
- believe**, existimō, āre, āvī, ātūs; crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum, w. dat.
- below**, inferus, a, um.
- benefit**, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, w. dat.
- benefit**, ūsus, ūs, n.
- besiege**, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātūs; ob-sideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus.
- best**, optimus, a, um; adv., optimē.
- betake one's self**, cōferō, cōferre, contuli, conlātus (refl.).
- between**, inter, w. acc.

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus.
bind, vinciō, ire, vinxī, vinctus.
bird, avis, is, f.
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
body, corpus, corporis, n.
book, liber, libri, m.
booty, praeda, ae, f.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom of, imus, a, um.
boundary, finēs, ium, m. plur.
boy, puer, pueri, m.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, f.
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, ferō. ferre, tuli, lātūs; portō,
 āre, āvī, ātūs; bring in, inferō,
 intulī, inlātūs; bring to
 gether, cōferō, cōferre, contulī,
 conlātūs.
broad, lātūs, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātūs; faciō,
 ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, i, n.
burn, incendō, ere, incendī, incēn-
 sus.
but, sed, at; autem (*postpositive*).
by, sign of abl.; ā or ab, w. abl.; by
 means of, abl. of means; per, w. acc.

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, m.
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātūs; appellō,
 āre, āvī, ātūs; call together, con-
 vocō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
camp, castra, ūrum, n. plur.
can, possum, posse, potui.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus; ex-
 pugnō, āre, āvī, ātūs.
care, cūra, ae, f.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, ae, f.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātūs; ferō,
 ferre, tuli, lātūs; carry back, referō,
 referre, rettuli, relātūs; carry on,
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, f.
case, causa, ae, f.
cause, causa, ae, f.
cavalry, equitātūs, ūs, m.; equitēs,
 um, m. plur.; (of the) cavalry,
 equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, ae, m.
certain, a . . . one, quīdam, quaedam,
 quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, i; in chains, ex
 vinculīs.
chance, cāsūs, ūs, m.
change, convertō, ere, converti, con-
 versus.
charge, signa īferō, īferre, intulī,
 inlātūs.
charge of, be in, praesum, praesesse,
 praefūl, praefutūrus, w. dat.; put in
charge of, praeſiciō, ere, praeſēcī,
 praeſectus, w. dat.
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, m.
children, liberi, ūrum, m. plur.
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgl, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, f.
citizen, cīvis, is, m. and f.
citizenship, cīvitās, ātis, f.
city, urbs, urbīs, f.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, f.
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
column, agmen, agminis, n.
come, veniō, ire, vēni, ventum; come
 around, circumveniō, ire, circum-

vēni, circumventus; cōme near, accēdō, ere, accessī, accessūrus; come together, conveniō, īre, con- vēni, conventus; come up, per- veniō, īre, pervēni, perventus.	cry, clāmor, ūris, m. cup, pōculum, ī, n. custom, cōsuētūdō, inis, f. cut down, occidō, ere, occidi, occisus.
command, imperium, ī, n.	D .
command, iubeō, īre, iussi, iussus; imperō, āre, āvi, ātum; mandō, āre, āvi, ātus; prae sum, prae esse, prae- fui, prae futūrus (<i>w. dat.</i>).	daily, cottidiānus, a, um; adv., cot- tidiē.
commander, dux, ducia, m.; imperā- tor, ūris, m.	danger, periculum, ī, n.
commit, committō, ere, commisi, com- missus.	dare, audeō, īre, ausus sum.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, f.	daughter, filia, ae, f.
companion, socius, ī, m.	day, diēs, diēi, m.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctus.	daybreak, at, prīmā lūce.
complete, compleō, complēre, com- plēvi, complētus.	daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.
concerning, dē, w. abl.	dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.
condemn, damnō, āre, āvi, ātus.	dearly, cārē.
confer, conloquor, conloqui, conlocū- tus sum.	death, mors, mortis, f.
confidence, fidēs, ei, f.	deed, factum, ī, n.
congratulate, grātulor, āri, ātus sum.	deep, altus, a, um.
conquer, superō, āre, āvi, ātus; vincō, ere, vici, victus.	defeat, calamitās, ātis, f.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ūnis, f.	defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendi, dē- fēnsus.
conspirator, coniūrātus, ī, m.	defense, praesidium, ī, n.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.	delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.
contend, contendō, ere, contendī, contentus; dīmicō, āre, āvi, ātus.	delight, dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus.
contracted, angustus, a, um.	deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvi, ātus; (= hand over) trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus.
convert, convertō, ere, convertī, con- versus.	Delphi, Delphī, ūrum, m.
Corinth, Corinthus, ī, f.	demand, postulō, āre, āvi, ātus; petō, ere, petivī or petī, petitus.
country, terra, ae, f.; patria, ae, f.; rūa, rūris, n.; in the country, rūri.	depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.
courage, animus, ī, m.	dependent, cliēns, clientis, m.
cross, trānsēdō, īre, trānsi, trānsitus.	depth, altitūdō, inis, f.
crowd, vulgus, ī, n.; multitudō, inis, f.	desire, cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī, cupitus.
	desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.
	determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus.
	die, morior, mori, mortuus sum; cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

difficult , difficilis, e.	enough , satis, <i>indecl.</i>
diligence , diligentia, ae, f.	ensign , signum, i, n.
direct , administrō, āre, āvi, ātus.	entangle , impediō, īre, impedīvī, im-
disaster , calamitās, ātia, f.	peditus.
discover , reperiō, īre, repperi, re-	equal , pār, paris.
disgraceful , turpis, e. [pertus.	equestrian , equester, equestris, eques-
dismiss , dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus.	tre.
dispatch , praemittō, ere, praemisi,	equip , armō, āre, āvi, ātus.
praemissus.	establish , cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus.
disposition , animus, i, m.	Europe , Eurōpa, ae, f.
dissimilar , dissimilis, e.	even , express by ipse, a, um.
ditch , fossa, ae, f.	ever , semper.
do , faciō, ere, fēci, factus; agō, ere,	every , omnis, e.
ēgi, āctus.	evil , malus, a, um.
document , litterae, ārum, f. plur.	exceedingly , express by superlative.
door , porta, ae, f.	except , nisi.
down from , dē, w. abl. [w. dat.	exchange , inter sē dare.
draw near , appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum,	exhort , cohortor, āri, ātus sum.
draw up , instruō, ere, Instrūxi, in-	expect , exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus.
strūctus.	expel , pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus.
drive away , pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus.	
during , inter, w. acc.	

E

each (one) , quisque, quaeque, quid-
que; each (of two) , uterque, utra-
que, utrumque.
eager , ācer, ācris, ācre; eager for ,
cupidus, a, um (w. gen.).
eagerly , ācrier; cum studiō.
earthworks , vällum, i, n.
easily , facile.
easy , facilis, e.
eight , octō.
employ , ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, w. abl.
encourage , hortor, āri, ātus sum;
cohortor, āri, ātus sum; incitō,
āre, āvi, ātus.
end , finis, is, m.
enemy , hostis, is, m. and f.
enjoy , fruor, frui, fructus sum, w. abl.

face about , signa convertō, conver-
tere, convertī, conversus.
facing , adversus, a um; <i>prep.</i> , adver-
sus, w. acc. [w. dat.
fail , dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfuturus,
faithful , fidus, a, um.
fall , cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.
falling , cāsus, us, m.
famous , express by ille, illa, illud.
far , far off, longē.
farmer , agricola, ae, m.
father , pater, patris, m.
favor , grātia, ae, f.
fear , timeō, ēre, timuī, —; vereor,
ēri, veritus sum.
fertile , ferāx, ferācis.
few , pauci, ae, a (plur.).
field , ager, agrī, m.
fierce , ācer, ācris, ācre; asper, aspera,

asperum ; ferus, a, um.

fiercely, āriter.

fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātūm ; fight a battle, proelium facere.

fill up, compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētūs.

finally, dēnique.

find, inveniō, ire, invēnī, inventus ; reperiō, ire, repērī, repertus.

finish, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfeci, cōflectus.

fire, ignis, is, m. ; set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.

first, primus, a, um ; at first, prīmō.

fit, idōneus, a, um.

five, quīnque.

flank, latus, lateris, n.

flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.

flight, fuga, ae, f. ; put to flight, in fugam dare.

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

following, posterus, a, um.

food, cibus, i, m.

foot, pēs, pedis, m. ; at the foot of, sub, w. abl. ; to the foot of, sub, w. acc.

foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, m.

for, sign of dat. ; ob, propter, w. acc., prō, w. abl.

forbid, vetō, āre, vetūl, vetitus.

force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

forces, cōpiae, ārum, f.

forest, silva, ae, f.

form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; instrūō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus.

former, ille, illa, illud.

fort, castellum, i, n.

fortifications, moenia, ium, n. plur.

fortify, mūniō, ire, mūnivi or mūnīi,

fortune, fortūna, ae, f. [mūnītus.]

forty, quadrāgintā.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.

free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātūs.

freedom, libertās, ātis, f.

frequently, saepe.

friend, amicus, i, m.

friendship, amīctia, ae, f.

frighten, terreō, ēre, terrūl, territus.

from, sign of abl. ; ā or ab, ē or ex, dē, w. abl.

future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, i, m.

garrison, praesidium, i, n.

gate, porta, ae, f.

gather, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātus.

Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, f. ; (inhabitant), Gallus, i, m.

general, dux, ducis, m. ; imperātor, ūris, m.

gentle, lēnis, e.

gift, dōnum, i, n.

girl, puella, ae, f.

give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; give back, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ; give up, dēdō, ere, dēdidi, dēditus ; permittō, ere, permisi, permissus ; trādō, ere, trādidi, trāditus.

glad, laetus, a, um.

go, eō, ire, ii, itum ; proficīscor, i, profectus sum ; go across or over, trānseō, ire, trānsi, trānsitus ; go back, redeō, redire, redii, redditūs ; go forward, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessi, prōcessum ; go near, accēdō, ere, accessi, accessūrus ; go out, exēdō, exire, exi, exitūrus ; let go, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus ; be going to, active periphrastic conjugation (437).

god, deus, *i.*, *m.*
 goddess, dea, *ae*, *f.*
 good, bonus, *a*, *um*.
 graceful, gracilis, *e*.
 grain, frumentum, *i*, *n.*; supplies of
 grain, rēs frumentaria, rei frumen-
 tariae, *f.*
 great, magnus, *a*, *um*; great many,
 complurēs, *ia*, *plur.*; so great,
 tantus, *a*, *um*.
 greatness, magnitūdō, *inis*, *f.*
 Greece, Graecia, *ae*, *f.*
 Greek, Graecus, *i*, *m.*
 ground, on the, humi.
 guard, praesidium, *i*, *n.*
 guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, *inis*, *f.*
 hand, manus, ūs, *f.*
 Hannibal, Hannibal, *is*, *m.*
 happen, accidō, *ere*, accidī, —.
 harass, lacessō, *ere*, lacessivī, laces-
 situs.
 harbor, portus, ūs, *m.*
 hard, difficilis, *e*.
 hardly, vix.
 harm, noceō, *ere*, nocui, nocitū-
 rus, *w. dat.*
 hasten, mātūrō, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*; con-
 tendō, *ere*, contendī, contentum.
 haughty, superbus, *a*, *um*.
 have, habeō, *ere*, habui, habitus; *dat.*
 of possession; have to, *passive peri-*
 phrastic conjugation (438–9).
 he, is; hic; ille; he who, is quī.
 head, caput, capitī, *n.*; be at the
 head of, praesum, praeesse, praeſūl,
 praefutūrus, *w. dat.*
 hear, audiō, *ire*, audivi, auditus.
 height, altitūdō, *inis*, *f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adful, adfutūrus,
 w. dat.
 help, auxilium, *i*, *n.*; ūs, ūs, *m.*
 Helvetians, Helvētiī, ūrum, *plur.*
 her, hērs, eius; suus, *a*, *um*; her
 (own), suus, *a*, *um*.
 herself, *see self.*
 high, altus, *a*, *um*.
 hill, collis, *is*, *m.*; up the hill, ad-
 versō colle.
 himself, *see self.*
 hindrance, impedimentum, *i*, *n.*
 his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a*, *um*.
 hither, hūc.
 hold, teneō, *ēre*, tenuī, tentus; hold
 back, retineō, *ēre*, retinui, retentus;
 hold together, contineō, *ēre*, con-
 tinui, contentus; hold up, sustineō,
 ēre, sustinui, sustentus.
 home, domus, ūs or *i*, *f.*; at home,
 domī.
 honor, pudor, ūris, *m.*
 hope, spērō, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*.
 hope, spēs, spei, *f.*
 horn, cornū, ūs, *n.*
 horse, equus, *i*, *m.*
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
 hour, hōra, *ae*, *f.*
 house, domus, ūs or *i*, *f.*
 however, autem; tamen.
 hundred, centum.
 hurl, iaciō, *ere*, iēcī, iactus; coniciō,
 ere, coniēcī, coniectus.
 hurry, contendō, *ere*, contendī, con-
 tentum; mātūrō, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*.

I

I, ego, meī.
 Ides, īdūs, īduum, *f. plur.*
 if, sī; if not, nisi.

impede, *impediō, īre, impedīvī, impedītūs.*

in, sign of abl.; *in, w. abl.*; **be in, in-**

sum, inesse, īsfui, īsfutūrūs.

incite, incitō, īre, īvī, ītūs.

increase, augeō, īre, auxī, auctus.

industry, diligētia, ae, f.

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, m. plur.

influence, grātia, ae, f.; auctōritās,

ātis, f.; **have most influence, plūri-**

mum posse.

influence, permōveō, īre, permōvī,

permōtūs.

inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, fac-

tūs.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incoluī, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, m.

injure, noceō, īre, nocuī, nocitūrūs,

w. dat.; **obsum, obesse, obfui, obfu-**

tūrūs, w. dat. [esse, w. dat.

intend, in animō habēre; in animō

into, in, w. acc.

intrust, committō, ere, commisi, com-

missus; permittō, ere, permisi, per-

missus.

island, īnsula, ae, f.

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, ītalia, ae, f.

ita, eius; suus, a, um.

J

January, īānuārius, ī, m.

javelin, pilūm, ī, n.

join, iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus; join

battle, proelium committō, ere,

commisi, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, m.

journey, iter, itineris, n.

judgment, iūdīcīum, ī, n.

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, īre, īvī, ītūs; keep

(away) from, prohibeō, īre, prohibui,

prohibitūs. **kill, necō, īre, īvī, ītūs;**

interficiō, ere, interfeci, interfectus;

occidō, ere, occidi, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, f.

king, rēx, rēgis, m.

know, sciō, scire, scivī, scītūs; intel-

legō, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus; perf.

of cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.

labor, labor, īris, m.; opus, operis, n.

lack, inopia, ae, f.

lack, careō, īre, caruī, caritūrūs, w. abl.

lacking, be, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dē-

futūrūs, w. dat.

land, terra, ae, f.; native land, pa-

tria, ae, f.

large, magnus, a, um; amplus, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte; till late

at night, ad multam noctem.

latter, hīc, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, f.

lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus; lead

across or over, trādūcō, ere, trā-

dūxi, trāductus; lead back, re-

dūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus; lead

out, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxi, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, m.; prīnceps, prī-

cipis, m.

learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, intel-

lēctus; discō, ere, didicī, —;

learn of, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī,

cōgnitus.

leave, *intrans.*, discēdō, ere, discessi, discessum; exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus.
trans., leave, leave behind, relinquođ, ere, reliquī, relictus.
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.
left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; nothing left, nihil reliqui.
legion, legiō, ūnis, f.
lest, nē, w. *subjv.*
let, *sign of imper. or subjv.*; let go, dimittō, ere, dīmisi, dīmissus.
letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, f.; (epistle), litterae, ārum, f. *plur.*
liberate, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
liberty, libertās, ātis, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, i, m.
life, vita, ae, f.
lift up, tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.
like, similis, e.
like, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
line of battle, aciēs, ēi, f.
little, parvus, a, um.
live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.
long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.
lord, dominus, i, m.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
low, humiliš, e.
loyal, fidus, a, um.

M

mad, insānus, a, um.
make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, viri, m.; homō, hominis, m. and f.; a man who, is qui.
manage, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
manhood, virtūs, ūtis, f.
many, plural of multus, a, um; very many, complūrēs, complūria.
march, iter, itineris, n.; on the march, ex itinere,

march, proficiscor, proficisci, prosecutus sum; iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.
Marcus, Mārcus, i, m.
master, magister, magistri, m.; dominus, i, m.
may, sign of wish; utinam, w. *subjv.*
means of, by, abl. of means; per, w. *acc.*
mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
merchant, mercātor, ūris, m.
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, m.
messenger, nūntius, i, m.
middle of, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs; plur., millia passuum.
mind, animus, i, m.; mēns, mentis, f.; have in mind, in animō habēre; in animō esse, w. dat.; turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.
mine, meus, a, um.
misfortune, cāsus, ūs, m.
money, pecūnia, ae, f.
month, mēnsis, is, m.
moon, lūna, ae, f.
more, plūs, plūris; sign of comparative.
moreover, autem (postpositive).
most, sign of superlative.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, multus, a, um; adv., multum, multō.
multitude, multitūdō, inis, f.
must, passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent (438-9).
my, meus, a, um.
myself, see self.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, n.
name, appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.	older, maior nātū.
nation, nātiō, ūnis, f.; gēns, gentis, f.	on, in, w. abl.
native land, patria, ae, f.	one, ūnus, a, um; one who, is qui;
near, ad, apud, w. acc.; come near, go	one ... another, alius ... alius; the
near, accēdō, ere, accessi, acces-	one ... the other, alter ... alter; to
nearest, proximus, a, um. [sūrus.	one another, inter sē.
need, be in need of, careō, ēre, carui,	only, sōlus, a, um.
caritūrus, w. abl.	opportunity, spatiū, i, n.
neighbor, finitimus, i, m.	oppose, resistō, ere, restitū, —, w. dat.
neighboring, finitimus, a, um.	order to, in, ut, w. subjv.
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.	order, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus; imperō,
neither ... nor, neque ... neque.	āre, āvi, ātum; mandō, āre, āvi,
never, numquam.	ātus.
nevertheless, tamen.	Orgetorix, Orgetorix, igis, m.
new, novus, a, um.	other, alius, alia, aliud; (of two),
next, proximus, a, um; posterus,	alter, a, um.
a, um.	ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus;
night, nox, noctis, f.; late at night,	oportet, ēre, oportuit, <i>impers.</i> ;
multā nocte.	passive <i>periphrastic conjugation</i>
nineteen, ūndēvigintī.	(438-9).
-no, nōn; no one, none, nūllus, a, um;	our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;
nēmō, dat. nēminī.	our men, nostri, ūrum, m. plur.
nor, neque.	ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsi, ae, a.
north wind, aquilō, ūnis, m.	out of, ē or ex, w. abl.
not, nōn; and not, but not, neque;	over, in, w. abl.; trāns, w. acc.; be
not to, nē, w. subjv.; if not, nisi;	over, supersum, superesse, superfui,
that not, nē, w. subjv.	superfutūrus, w. dat.
nothing, nihil, <i>indecl.</i>	overcome, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.
notice, animadvertō, ere, animadverti,	overtake, cōsequor, cōsequi, cō-
animadversus.	secūtus sum.
now, nunc, iam.	owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus.
number, numerus, i, m.; multitūdō,	P
inis, f.	
O	
O that, utinam, w. subjv.	pace, passus, ūs, m.
obey, pāreō, ēre, pārui, —, w. dat.	part, pars, partis, f.
obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus.	peace, pāx, pācis, f.
occupy, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.	pear tree, pirus, i, f.
of, sign of gen.; dē, w. abl.	people, populus, i, m.
often, saepe.	perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, in-
old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.	tellēctus.
	perish, cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus.

permit, permittō, ere, permisi, permisum; concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum.	present, be, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfui, interfutūrus.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, <i>w. dat.</i>	preserve, servō, āre, āvi, ātus.
pitch (camp), pōnō, ere, posui, positus.	pretty, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
place, locus, i, m.; plur., locī or loca; in that place, ibi; to this place, hūc.	proceed, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōscētūs sum.
place, pōnō, ere, posui, positus; conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; cōstituō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus.	promise, pollicor, ēri, pollicitus sum.
plan, cōnsilium, i, n.	proper, be, oportet, ēre, oportuit, impers.
plead (a cause), dīcō, ere, dixi, dictus.	protect, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.
please, dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus.	protection, praesidium, i, n.; fidēs, eī, f.; put one's self under the protection of, in fidem venire, <i>w. dat.</i>
pleasing, grātus, a, um.	proud, superbus, a, um.
pledge, obses, obsidis, m. or f.	provide, parō, āre, āvi, ātus; comparō, āre, āvi, ātus.
plow, arō, āre, āvi, ātus.	province, prōvincia, ae, f.
point out, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.	provisions, commētus, ūs, m.; rēs frūmentāria, ref frūmentāriae, f.
Pompey, Pompēius, i, m.	prudence, cōnsilium, i, n.
poor, miser, misera, miserum.	public, pūblicus, a, um.
possess, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus.	punish, pūniō, īre, pūniū, pūnitus.
possession, take possession of, occūpō, āre, āvi, ātus; get possession of, potior, potirī, potitus sum, <i>w. abl.</i>	punishment, poena, ae, f.
possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, quam, <i>w. superl. of adj.</i> ; as soon as possible, quam primum.	pupil, discipulus, i, m.
power, potestās, ātis, f.; imperium, i, n.; vis, acc., vim.	purpose of, for the, ad, <i>w. acc. of gerundive.</i>
powerful, potēns, potentis; be very powerful, plūrimum posse.	pursue, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōscētūs sum.
praise, laudō, āre, āvi, ātus.	put to flight, in fugam dō.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.	
prepare, parō, āre, āvi, ātus; comparō, āre, āvi, ātus,	Q
	queen, rēgina, ae, f.
	quickly, celeriter.
	quickness, celeritās, ātis, f.
	R
	race (= nation), gēns, gentis, f.
	raise, tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus,

rampart, vällum, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>	back), reddō, reddere, reddidi, redditus.
rank, ḍordō, ḍordinis, <i>m.</i>	reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus. [tum.	reward, praemium, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>
reach, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perven-	Rhine, Rhēnus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>
rear, novissimum agmen, <i>n.</i>	Rhone, Rhodanus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>
reason, causa, ae, <i>f.</i>	right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpi, accep-	river, flūmen, flūminis, <i>n.</i>
tus; recipiō, ere, recēpi, receptus.	road, via, ae, <i>f.</i> ; iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>
recognize, cōgnoscō, ere, cōgnōvi,	rock, saxum, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>
cōgnitus.	Roman, Rōmānus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ; as subst., Rōmānus, <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>
redoubt, castellum, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>	Rome, Rōma, ae, <i>f.</i>
relief, subsidium, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>	rose, rosa, ae, <i>f.</i>
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum;	rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsurus.	rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
remaining, reliquus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .	rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.	rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; im- perō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>w.</i> , <i>dat.</i>
render, reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus.	run away, fugiō, ere, fūgi, —.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondi, re- spōnsus.	S
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō,	safe, tūtus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .
āre, āvī, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvī,	sailor, nauta, ae, <i>m.</i>
ātus.	sake of, for the, causā, <i>w. gen.</i> ; ut, <i>w. subjv.</i>
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, <i>f.</i>	sally, ēruptiō, ḍnis, <i>f.</i>
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	same, īdem, eadem, idem.
request, petō, ere, petivī or petii, petitus.	save (= preserve), servō, āre, āvī, ātus; (= rescue), ēripiō, ere, ēri- puī, ēreptus. [def.
require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.	say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus; inquam,
resist, resistō, ere, restiti, —, <i>w. dat.</i>	scare, terreō, ēre, terrui, territus.
respect, vereor, ērī, veritus sum.	scout, explōrātor, ḍris, <i>m.</i>
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.	sea, mare, is, <i>n.</i>
rest of, reliquus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .	seat, sedile, is, <i>n.</i>
restrain, contineō, ēre, continui, con-	second, secundus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ; for the tentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obten-	second time, iterum.
tus; retineō, ēre, retinui, relentus.	see, videō, ēre, vidi, visus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpi, receptus	seek, petō, ere, petivī or petii, petitus;
(ref.); pedem referō, referre, ret-	quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus,
tuli, relatūs.	
return, intr., redeō, redire, rediī,	
reditūrus; revertor, reverti, re-	
verti, reversus; trans. (= give	

seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus ; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.	slay, occidō, ere, occidi, occisus.
select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.	slender, gracilis, e.
self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (<i>intens.</i>) ; sui (<i>refl.</i>) ; myself, yourself, ourselves, ipse (<i>intens.</i>) ; pers. pron. (<i>refl.</i>).	slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.
senate, senātūs, ūs, m.	small, parvus, a, um.
send, mittō, ere, misi, missus ; send ahead, praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemissus ; send off, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus.	smooth, lēnis, e.
Sequani, Sēquani, ūrum, m. <i>plur.</i>	snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripui, ēreptus.
set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.	so, ita ; tam (<i>w. adjs. and advs.</i>) ; so great, tantus, a, um ; and so, itaque ; so as not, nē, <i>w. subjv.</i>
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, prosecutus sum.	soldier, miles, mīlitis, m.
set over, praeficiō, ere, praefeci, praefectus, <i>w. acc. and dat.</i>	sole, sōlus, a, um.
seven, septem.	some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid (quod) ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) ; some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī ; some in one direction, some in another, aliī aliam in partem.
seventy, septuāgintā.	son, filius, filii or filii, m.
severely, graviter.	son-in-law, gener, generi, m.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.	soon, iam ; mox ; as soon as, quam primum.
she, ea ; illa.	space, spatium, i, n.
ship, nāvis, is, f.	speak, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus ; speak together, conloquor, conloqui, conlocutus sum.
short, brevis, e.	spear, hasta, ae, f.
shout, clāmor, ūris, m.	speech, ūrātiō, ūnis, f.
show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.	speed, celeritās, ātis, f.
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.	spirit, animus, i, m.
side, latus, lateris, n. ; from or on all sides, undique.	spoil, praeda, ae, f.
sight, cōspectus, ūs, m.	stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestitū, —.
sign, signum, i, n.	star, stella, ae, f.
similar, similis, e.	state, cīvitās, ātis, f. ; rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f.
six, sex.	station, cōlocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; constituō, ere, cōstitui, cōnstitūtus.
size, magnitūdō, inis, f.	stay, maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsum.
skillful, perītus, a, um.	storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus ; take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus,
slaughter, caedēs, is, f.	
slave, servus, i, m.	

- story, *fábula*, *ae*, *f.*
 strange, *aliénus*, *a*, *um*.
 street, *via*, *ae*, *f.*
 strength, *vis*, *vim*, *f.*
 strengthen, *alō*, *ere*, *alui*, *alitus or altus*.
 strive, *contendō*, *ere*, *contendī*, *con-*
 tentum.
 strong, *validus*, *a*, *um*.
 struggle, *contendō*, *ere*, *contendī*, *con-*
 tentum.
 sturdy, *validus*, *a*, *um*.
 such, *tālis*, *e*; *tantus*, *a*, *um*.
 suffer, *patior*, *pati*, *passus sum*; *la-*
 bōrō, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*.
 suitable, *idōneus*, *a*, *um*.
 summer, *aestās*, *ātis*, *f.*
 summon, *convocō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*.
 supplies, *commeātus*, *ūs*, *m.*; supplies
 of grain, *rēs frūmentāria*, *f.*
 supply, *cōpia*, *ae*, *f.*
 suppose, *existimō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*;
 arbitror, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.
 surpass, *tr.*, *superō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*;
 intr., *praestō*, *praestāre*, *praestitī*, —.
 surrender, *dēditiō*, *ōnis*, *f.*
 surrender, *trādō*, *trādere*, *trādidī*,
 trāditus; *dēdō*, *dēdere*, *dēdidi*,
 dēditus.
 surround, *circumveniō*, *ire*, *circum-*
 vēni, *circumventus*.
 survive, *supersum*, *superesse*, *super-*
 fui, *superfutūrus*.
 sustain, *sustineō*, *ēre*, *sustinui*, *sus-*
 tentus.
 swift, *vēlōx*, *vēlōcis*.
 swiftly, *celeriter*.
 sword, *gladius*, *i*, *m.*
- T
- table, *mēnsa*, *ae*, *f.*
 take, *capiō*, *ere*, *cēpī*, *captus*; take
- away, *tollō*, *ere*, *sustulī*, *sublātus*;
 take by storm, *expugnō*, *āre*, *āvi*,
 ātus; take possession of, *occupō*,
 āre, *āvi*, *ātus*.
 teacher, *magister*, *magistrī*, *m.*
 tell, *dicō*, *ere*, *dixī*, *dictus*.
 temple, *templum*, *i*, *n.*; *aedēs*,
 aedis, *f.*
 ten, *decem*.
 tender, *tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*.
 territory, *finēs*, *finium*, *m. plur.*
 than, *quam*; *abl.* after comparative.
 that, *demonstr.*, *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*,
 illud; *rel.*, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.
 that, in order that, so that, *ut*, *w.*
 subjv.; after verbs of fearing, *nē*, *w.*
 subjv.; that not, *nē*, *w.* *subjv.*;
 would that, *utinam*.
 their (own), *theirs*, *suus*, *a*, *um*;
 cōrūm, *ēarum*.
 themselves, see self.
 then, *tum*.
 thence, *inde*. [lated.]
 there, *ibi*; introductory, not trans-
 therefore, *itaque*.
 thereupon, *inde*.
 they, *ii*, *eae*, *ea*; *illī*, *illae*, *illa*.
 thing, *rēs*, *rei*, *f.*
 think, *existimō*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātus*; arbi-
 tror, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.
 third, *tertius*, *a*, *um*.
 thirty, *trigintā*.
 this, *hīc*, *haec*, *hoc*.
 thou, *tū*.
 thousand, *mille* (*indecl.*); *plur.*, *millia*
 or *milia*.
 three, *trēs*, *tria*; three hundred, *tre-*
 centi, *ae*, *a*.
 through, *per*, *w. acc.*
 throw, *iaciō*, *ere*, *iēci*, *iactus*; *coniciō*,
 ere, *coniēci*, *coniectus*.

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, *i., n.*; for a long time, diū.

to, sign of dat.; ad, in, *w. acc.*; sign of subjv. of purpose.

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, *i., n.*

trader, mercātor, ḫris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxi, trā-
ductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdiciūm, *i., n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpiae, īrum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, ei, *f.* [w. dat.]

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum,

try, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī,
conversus; turn back, revertor, re-
vertī, revertī, reversus; turn the
mind to, animadvertō, ere, animad-
vertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vigintī.

two, duo, duea, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; urge on,
incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; be of use to, prōsum,
prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, pŕimum agmen, pŕimi agminis, *n.*

vassal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, adj. or adv. in superl.; intens.,
ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vīcus, *i., m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; wage
war upon, bellum īferō, īferre, ī-
tuli, īlātus, *w. dat.*

wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wall, mūrus, *i., m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*

war, bellum, *i., n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monū, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, *i., n.*; plur., arma,
ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōficiō, ere, cōfeci, cō-
fectus.

well, bene; well known, nōbilis, e.

what (rel.), quī, quae, quod;
(interrog.), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

which (rel.), quī, quae, quod;
(interrog.), quis, quae, quid;
which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

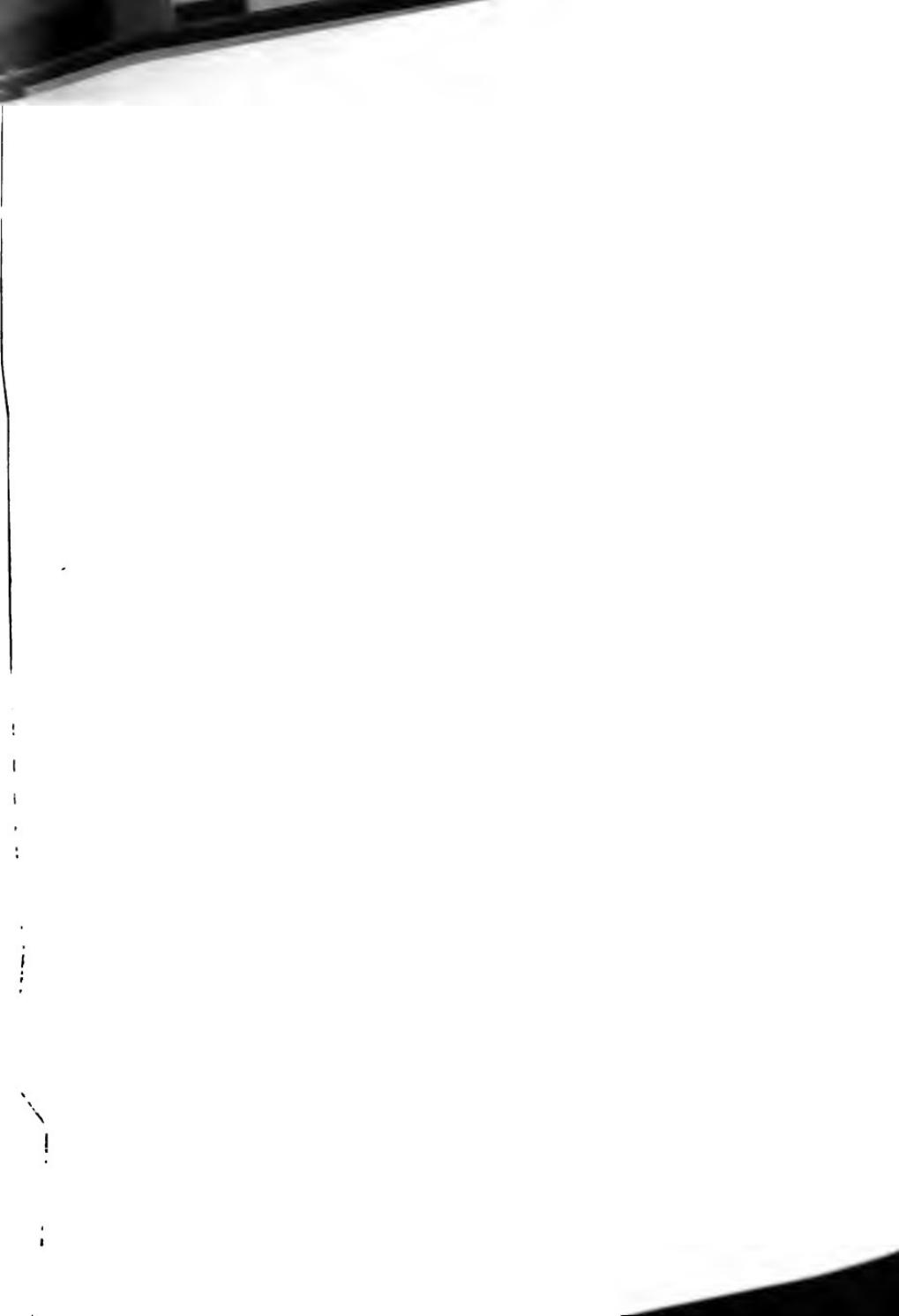
who (<i>rel.</i>), qui, quae ; (<i>interrog.</i>), quis, quae.	withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
whole, tōtus, a, um ; omnis, e.	woman, fēmina, ae, f. ; mulier, mulieris, f.
why, cūr.	wood (= forest), silva, ae, f.
wicked, malus, a, um.	work, labor, ūris, f. ; opus, operis, n.
wide, lātus, a, um.	work, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātūrus.
width, lātitūdō, inis, f.	would that, utinam, w. <i>subjv.</i>
wild, ferus, a, um.	wound, valnus, vulneris, n.
will, volō, velle, volui, —; will not, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —.	wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.
willing, be, volō, velle, volui, —; be more willing, mālō, mālle, mālui, —.	wretched, miser, misera, miserum.
wine, vīnum, i, n.	write, scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.
wing, cornū, ūs, n.	
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.	
winter quarters, hiberna, ūrum, n. <i>pl.</i>	Y
wisely, prūdenter.	year, annus, i, m.
wish, cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupītus; volō, velle, volui, —.	yet, tamen.
with, sign of abl.; cum, w. abl.; apud, w. acc. [cessum.	you, tū, vōs.
withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, dis-	young, iuvenis, is.
within, sign of abl. of time.	your, yours, tuus, a, um ; vester, vestra, vestrum.
without, sine, w. abl. ; be without, careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, w. abl.	yourself, tū, vōs ; ipse.
	Z
	zeal, studium, i, n.

INDEX

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Ablative, with <i>ab</i>, expressing agency, 142; of cause, 118; of comparison, 260; of manner, 148; of means or instrument, 94; of measure of difference, 267; of separation, 211; of specification, 157; of time, 131; descriptive, 302-303; ablative absolute, 315-317; with <i>utōr</i>, <i>fruor</i>, <i>fungor</i>, <i>potior</i>, and <i>vēscor</i>, 337.</p> <p>Accent, 20, 74, 1 and 2.</p> <p>Accusative, of time and space, 245; of limit of motion, 236, 237; as subject of infinitive, 184; 329.</p> <p>Adjectives, agreement, 65; demonstrative, 201; interrogative, 216, 217; possessive 292; as nouns, 203; with dative, 163.</p> <p>Adverbs, formation, 279; comparison, 280.</p> <p>Agency with the passive, expressed by ablative with <i>ab</i>, 142.</p> <p><i>aliquis</i>, 301.</p> <p>Apposition, 58.</p> <p><i>bonus</i>, comparison, 272.</p> <p>Cause, ablative of, 118.</p> <p>Commands, 399.</p> <p>Comparison, Lessons 43, 44; ablative of, 260; irregular, 272; of adverbs, 280.</p> <p>Complementary infinitive, 184.</p> <p>Compound verbs, construction, 393-394.</p> <p>Concessive clauses, 386-387.</p> <p>Conditional sentences, 413-421.</p> <p><i>cum</i> clauses, 386-387.</p> <p>Dative of possession, 231; of service, 294-295; with adjectives, 163; with verbs, 342-343; with compound verbs, 393-394.</p> | <p>Demonstratives, 201-202.</p> <p>Deponent verbs, 333-335, 508; perfect passive participle of, active in meaning, 335.</p> <p>Descriptive ablative and genitive, 302-303.</p> <p><i>domi</i>, 235.</p> <p><i>domus</i>, 222, 2; 501.</p> <p><i>eō</i>, 234; 525.</p> <p>Exceedingly, expressed by superlative, 268.</p> <p>Fearing, verbs of, 384, 385.</p> <p><i>ferō</i>, 527.</p> <p><i>fīō</i>, 526.</p> <p><i>fruor</i>, 337.</p> <p><i>fungor</i>, 337.</p> <p>Gender, rules of, 27, 28; 128; 223.</p> <p>Genitive, descriptive, 302-303; of the whole (partitive), 251.</p> <p>Gerund and Gerundive, 403-406.</p> <p><i>hic</i>, 201.</p> <p><i>humi</i>, 235.</p> <p><i>idem</i>, 189.</p> <p><i>ille</i>, 202.</p> <p>Imperative, 398, 399.</p> <p>Impersonal use of verbs, 432.</p> <p>Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.</p> <p>Indirect discourse, 327-330; 369-370; 427-430.</p> <p>Indirect object, 58.</p> <p>Indirect question, 369-370.</p> <p>Infinitive, formation, 322; as subject, 183 δ; complementary, 184; tense of, in indirect discourse, 330.</p> <p>Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216.</p> |
|---|---|

<i>ipse</i> , 207.	Quantity, 16-19.
<i>is</i> , 188, 191.	Questions, 40; indirect, 369-370.
<i>iste</i> , 208.	<i>qui</i> , 195.
Locative, 235.	<i>quidam</i> , 301.
<i>mālō</i> , 524.	<i>quis</i> , 216; 301.
Measure of difference, ablative of, 267.	<i>quisquam</i> , 301.
<i>mille</i> , 243, 3.	<i>quisque</i> , 301.
<i>-ne</i> , 40.	Rather, expressed by comparative, 268.
<i>nōlō</i> , 524.	Reflexive pronouns, 284, 286.
Numerals, 241-243.	Relative, 195; agreement, 197; relative clause of purpose, 363-364.
Order of words, 82.	Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.
Participles, formation, 307; tenses, 309; use, 311; of deponents, 334; perfect passive participle, active in meaning, 335; as protasis, 311, 315, 316, 421.	<i>rūri</i> , 235.
Partitive genitive, 251.	Separation, ablative of, 211.
Periphrastic conjugations, active, 437, 529; passive, 438, 439, 530.	Sequence of tenses, 371-374.
Personal pronouns, 284, 285.	Space, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245.
Place where, whither, whence, 237.	Subject of infinitive, 184.
<i>plūs</i> , 273.	Subjunctive, of purpose, 350-351; 363-364; of result, 356-358.
Possession, dative of, 231.	Substantive clauses, 378, 380; with verbs of fearing, 384-385.
Possessive adjectives, 292-293.	<i>sum</i> , 521.
<i>possum</i> , 274, 522.	Supine, 433-435.
<i>potior</i> , 337.	Syllables, 10-15.
Predicate agreement, 34, 184, 3.	Time, extent of, expressed by accusative, 245; clauses expressing time, 386-387.
Pronouns, demonstrative, 201; indefinite, 300-301; interrogative, 216; personal, 284; reflexive, 286; relative, 195; agreement, 197; in indirect discourse, 428.	Too, expressed by comparative, 268.
<i>prōsum</i> , 498.	<i>ütor</i> , 337.
Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 350-351; 363-364; by gerund or gerundive, 406; by supine, 433-435.	Very, expressed by superlative, 268.
	<i>vēscor</i> , 337.
	Vocative, 24.
	<i>volō</i> , 524.
	Wishes, 423-425.



14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

13 Apr '60 RT	REC'D LD	2 Feb '65 GB
APR 3 1960	REC'D LD	
4 Aug '60 CT		JAN 28 '65 - 8 AM
IN STACKS	REC'D LD	7 Oct '65 AA
JUL 21 1960	REC'D LD	SEP 24 '65 - 11 AM
JUL 28 1960	REC'D LD	NOV 29 1965 6 9
26 Apr '61 GP	REC'D LD	JAN 23 '66 - 3 PM
MAY 31 1961	RECEIVED	OCT 12 1967 5 9
19 Feb '62 SL	REC'D LD	OCT 11 '67 - 1 AM
MAY 15 1962	LOAN DEPT.	

LD 21A-50m-1,50
(A1724s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 45721

